1st Chronicles

Introduction

 These next two books along with the four preceding ones are really only three books, The book of Samuel, the book of Kings, and the book of Chronicles. They were divided into two books each because of their size.

 1st and 2nd Chronicles are not identical to 1st and 2nd Samuel, or 1st and 2nd Kings. Some of the same information is found in their pages, but they are vastly different.

 This book has a bunch of charts in it chronicling different subjects in Israel’s history with many of them overlapping one another.

 First, and 2nd Chronicles are the least read of the three mentioned above for that reason, but it is a great book to see all the different lists of people and events found in its pages that aren’t found elsewhere in such great detail.

Chapter One

From Adam to Israel

1 Adam, Sheth, Enosh, 2 Kenan, Mahalaleel, Jered, 3 Henoch, Methuselah, Lamech, 4 Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

 This lineage of only eleven people lasted through numerous dispensations (where God dispensed different truths to mankind than before). From Adam’s creation to Shem’s birth was 1,558 years.

The sons of Japheth

5 The sons of Japheth; Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras. 6 And the sons of Gomer; Ashchenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah. 7 And the sons of Javan; Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

Gomer, and Magog, Tubal, and Meshech (Tarshish): that will play a role in end-times prophecy in the war mentioned in Ezekiel 38:2, 13 and Revelation 20:8.

The sons of Gomer: Togarmah, Tarshish. Ezekiel 38:6.

The sons of Ham

8 The sons of Ham; Cush, and Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. 9 And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabta, and Raamah, and Sabtecha. And the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan. 10 And Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be mighty upon the earth.

Cush: See Isaiah 11:11.

Sheba, and Dedan: More end-times names here that are also in Ezekiel.

Nimrod: See Genesis 10:8-9, and 11:1-8. He built the tower of babel to start the first one-world government.

Mizraim

11 And Mizraim begat Ludim, and Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim, 12 And Pathrusim, and Casluhim, (of whom came the Philistines,) and Caphthorim.

 Each of Mizraim’s seven sons has the same two letters “im” at the end of their names. Im in Hebrew means plural. It is the same as the English letter “s” at the end of a word. Mizraim is the Hebrew word for Egypt.

Casluhim, (Of whom came the Philistines): Not the Palestinians: The Philistines were not descendants of the Canaanites. They were from Egypt originally.

Canaan

13 And Canaan begat Zidon his firstborn, and Heth, 14 The Jebusite also, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite, 15 And the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite, 16 And the Arvadite, and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite.

 Nine of Canaan’s eleven sons have the same three letters (ite) after their names while the first two do not. All of these can be called Canaanites.

The sons of Shem

17 The sons of Shem; Elam, and Asshur, and Arphaxad, and Lud, and Aram, and Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Meshech. 18 And Arphaxad begat Shelah, and Shelah begat Eber. 19 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was Peleg; because in his days the earth was divided: and his brother's name was Joktan.

Shem: This the Semitic line of Israel/Jews descended from.

Eber: Where we get the word Hebrew from. Genesis 14:13.

Peleg: He would have been a contemporary (alive at the same time) as Nimrod. Since Shem, Ham and Japheth were all brothers their lineages should appear side by side to see who was contemporary with whom for better understanding.

The Joktan lineage

20 And Joktan begat Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah, 21 Hadoram also, and Uzal, and Diklah, 22 And Ebal, and Abimael, and Sheba, 23 And Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan.

Ophir: The son of Joktan. See 1st Chronicles 1:23. He named the city that he settled in Ophir. It was a place with much gold where Solomon got his gold from mostly.

Peleg’s lineage

24 Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah, 25 Eber, Peleg, Reu, 26 Serug, Nahor, Terah, 27 Abram; the same is Abraham.

 There are only 390 years between Shem’s birth and Abraham’s birth. Shem was still alive when Abraham was born and lived another 210 years and died at 600 years old.

The sons of Abraham

28 The sons of Abraham; Isaac, and Ishmael.

Isaac, and Ishmael: They were brothers born 13 years apart to different mothers. Isaac was the youngest and he was the promised seed whose mother was Sarah. Ishmael was the oldest son, and he was born of Hagar the servant.

Ishmael

29 These are their generations: The firstborn of Ishmael, Nebaioth; then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam, 30 Mishma, and Dumah, Massa, Hadad, and Tema, 31 Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These are the sons of Ishmael.

 Ishmael had twelve sons just like Isaac did.

The first born of Ishmael: It does not say that Ishmael begat Nebaioth, or any of his siblings, the word begat returns when we get down to verse 34 concerning Isaac, the promised seed.

The sons of Keturah

32 Now the sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine: she bare Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah.

 She bore Abraham six sons. Two of her sons have more famous descendants than the other four. They are Jokshan and Midian.

And the sons of Jokshan; Sheba, and Dedan.

 These two sons are mentioned in Ezekiel 38:13 as well.

33 And the sons of Midian; Ephah, and Epher, and Henoch, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these are the sons of Keturah.

 Midian had five sons, the grandsons of Keturah.

All these are the sons of Keturah: This means her sons, and grandsons, and so on.

And Abraham begat Isaac

34 And Abraham begat Isaac. The sons of Isaac; Esau and Israel.

Abraham begat Isaac: He did not say this of Ishmael because Isaac was the child of promise.

Esau: Who sold his birthright for a bowl of stew.

Israel: Jacob, who bought Esau’s birthright.

The sons of Esau

35 The sons of Esau; Eliphaz, Reuel, and Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah. 36 The sons of Eliphaz; Teman, and Omar, Zephi, and Gatam, Kenaz, and Timna, and Amalek.

Amalek: He was a notorious enemy of Israel along with his children the Amalekites.

37 The sons of Reuel; Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. 38 And the sons of Seir; Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, and Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan. 39 And the sons of Lotan; Hori, and Homam: and Timna was Lotan's sister. 40 The sons of Shobal; Alian, and Manahath, and Ebal, Shephi, and Onam. And the sons of Zibeon; Aiah, and Anah. 41 The sons of Anah; Dishon. And the sons of Dishon; Amram, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran. 42 The sons of Ezer; Bilhan, and Zavan, and Jakan. The sons of Dishan; Uz, and Aran.

The kings of Edom

43 Now these are the kings that reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the children of Israel; Bela the son of Beor: and the name of his city was Dinhabah. 44 And when Bela was dead, Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead. 45 And when Jobab was dead, Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his stead. 46 And when Husham was dead, Hadad the son of Bedad, which smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead: and the name of his city was Avith. 47 And when Hadad was dead, Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead. 48 And when Samlah was dead, Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his stead. 49 And when Shaul was dead, Baalhanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead. 50 And when Baalhanan was dead, Hadad reigned in his stead: and the name of his city was Pai; and his wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab. 51 Hadad died also.

 Thus ends the kings of Edom that reigned in their land before the children of Israel’s kings began to reign beginning with Saul.

The dukes of Edom

And the dukes of Edom were; duke Timnah, duke Aliah, duke Jetheth, 52 Duke Aholibamah, duke Elah, duke Pinon, 53 Duke Kenaz, duke Teman, duke Mibzar, 54 Duke Magdiel, duke Iram. These are the dukes of Edom.

The dukes of Edom: These were leaders (captains or governors) in Edom. The land east of the Jordan river.

Chapter Two

The sons of Israel

1 These are the sons of Israel; Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, 2 Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

The sons of Israel: Israel had twelve sons and one daughter. Israel’s name was changed from Jacob in Genesis 32:28. It means a prince with God.

The sons of Judah

3 The sons of Judah; Er, and Onan, and Shelah: which three were born unto him of the daughter of Shua the Canaanitess.

The daughter of Shua: There are two women named Shua in the bible. The other one is a descendant of Heber (Eber) the Hebrew. See 1st Chronicles 7:32. She is called Shuah in Genesis 38:3.

 Judah had three children of his wife Shua a Canaanitess (who later died). See Genesis 38:12.

And Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the sight of the LORD; and he slew him. 4 And Tamar his daughter in law bare him Pharez and Zerah. All the sons of Judah were five.

LORD: Is from the four consonants in Hebrew alphabet, YHVH. Possibly pronounced as Yahweh in Hebrew. There is no letter J in Hebrew. Joshua is really pronounced Yoshua.

 Jews did not pronounce the name because it doesn’t have vowels in it and they didn’t want to blaspheme the name of God by pronouncing it incorrectly, so they translated his name as LORD. There are many Lords, but there is only one LORD.

Tamar his daughter in law bare him Pharez and Zerah: Judah had two more children with his daughter in law Tamar, who pretended to be a harlot to have children with him. See Genesis 38:6-30.

 These two sons were twins, but Hezron was the firstborn which had the thread tide on his hand when it came out first and went back in. See Genesis 38:28-30.

5 The sons of Pharez; Hezron, and Hamul. 6 And the sons of Zerah; Zimri, and Ethan, and Heman, and Calcol, and Dara: five of them in all.

Zerah: He was the firstborn of Tamar.

 Zabdi is also a son of Zerah and he begat Carmi the father of Achan (Achar), but he is not listed in the lineage. He may have died after having Carmi. See Joshua 7:1.

The sons of Carmi

7 And the sons of Carmi; Achar, the troubler of Israel, who transgressed in the thing accursed.

Achar, the troubler of Israel: This is Achan who stole a Babylonian garment and much silver and gold and hid it under his tent. He cause 36 men to die at Ai, and the LORD destroyed his whole family.

8 And the sons of Ethan; Azariah.

 This is where Ethan’s lineage ends.

9 The sons also of Hezron, that were born unto him; Jerahmeel, and Ram, and Chelubai. See verse 24 also.

Jerahmeel: See verse 25 also.

Chelubai: Also known as Caleb. See verses 18-24.

Begat again?

10 And Ram begat Amminadab; and Amminadab begat Nahshon, prince of the children of Judah;

The prince of the children of Judah: He was the head of the house of Judah. Numbers 1:7. Nahshon actually led the whole nation as they travelled in the wilderness. See Numbers 7:14.

11 And Nahshon begat Salma, and Salma begat Boaz, 12 And Boaz begat Obed, and Obed begat Jesse, 13 And Jesse begat his firstborn Eliab, and Abinadab the second, and Shimma the third, 14 Nethaneel the fourth, Raddai the fifth, 15 Ozem the sixth, David the seventh:

David the seventh: Jesse had eight sons, but the unnamed son is left out of the lineage. See 1st Samuel 16:10. He may be Elihu in 1st Chronicles 27:18. Jesse only had seven sons when 1st Chronicles was written many years later.

David’s sisters

16 Whose sisters were Zeruiah, and Abigail. And the sons of Zeruiah; Abishai, and Joab, and Asahel, three.

Abishai: This is the person who went down to Saul’s camp with David and wanted to smite Saul with his own spear, but David wouldn’t allow him. See 1st Samuel 26:6-9.

Joab: He was at Gibeon as the leader of twelve men from Judah that fought with twelve men of Benjamin under Abner. 2nd Samuel 2:12-17.

Asahel: He was light of foot and pursued after Abner, but Abner killed him with a spear. See 2nd Samuel 2:23.

17 And Abigail bare Amasa: and the father of Amasa was Jether the Ishmeelite.

Amasa: He became the captain of the host of Israel under Absalom’s rebellion. 2nd Samuel 25. His father’s name was Ithra, an Israelite, according to 2nd Samuel 17:25.

 The names Jether and Ithra are from the same root word in Hebrew. A prefix representing Jehovah (Je) is added to his name her.

 Jether is also called an Israelite in two other occasions. Both are possible if Jether was born an Ishmeelite, but converted and married an Israelite.

Caleb the son of Hezron

18 And Caleb the son of Hezron begat children of Azubah his wife, and of Jerioth: her sons are these; Jesher, and Shobab, and Ardon.

Jerioth: She was Caleb’s concubine.

19 And when Azubah was dead, Caleb took unto him Ephrath, which bare him Hur. 20 And Hur begat Uri, and Uri begat Bezaleel.

Ephrath: She was Caleb’s other concubine.

21 And afterward Hezron went in to the daughter of Machir the father of Gilead, whom he married when he was threescore years old; and she bare him Segub. 22 And Segub begat Jair, who had three and twenty cities in the land of Gilead. 23 And he took Geshur, and Aram, with the towns of Jair, from them, with Kenath, and the towns thereof, even threescore cities. All these belonged to the sons of Machir the father of Gilead. 24 And after that Hezron was dead in Calebephratah, then Abiah Hezron's wife bare him Ashur the father of Tekoa. 25 And the sons of Jerahmeel the firstborn of Hezron were, Ram the firstborn, and Bunah, and Oren, and Ozem, and Ahijah. 26 Jerahmeel had also another wife, whose name was Atarah; she was the mother of Onam.

The sons of Ram

27 And the sons of Ram the firstborn of Jerahmeel were, Maaz, and Jamin, and Eker. 28 And the sons of Onam were, Shammai, and Jada. And the sons of Shammai; Nadab, and Abishur. 29 And the name of the wife of Abishur was Abihail, and she bare him Ahban, and Molid. 30 And the sons of Nadab; Seled, and Appaim: but Seled died without children. 31 And the sons of Appaim; Ishi. And the sons of Ishi; Sheshan. And the children of Sheshan; Ahlai. 32 And the sons of Jada the brother of Shammai; Jether, and Jonathan: and Jether died without children. 33 And the sons of Jonathan; Peleth, and Zaza. These were the sons of Jerahmeel. 34 Now Sheshan had no sons, but daughters. And Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Jarha. 35 And Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha his servant to wife; and she bare him Attai. 36 And Attai begat Nathan, and Nathan begat Zabad, 37 And Zabad begat Ephlal, and Ephlal begat Obed, 38 And Obed begat Jehu, and Jehu begat Azariah, 39 And Azariah begat Helez, and Helez begat Eleasah, 40 And Eleasah begat Sisamai, and Sisamai begat Shallum, 41 And Shallum begat Jekamiah, and Jekamiah begat Elishama. 42 Now the sons of Caleb the brother of Jerahmeel were, Mesha his firstborn, which was the father of Ziph; and the sons of Mareshah the father of Hebron. 43 And the sons of Hebron; Korah, and Tappuah, and Rekem, and Shema. 44 And Shema begat Raham, the father of Jorkoam: and Rekem begat Shammai. 45 And the son of Shammai was Maon: and Maon was the father of Bethzur. 46 And Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bare Haran, and Moza, and Gazez: and Haran begat Gazez. 47 And the sons of Jahdai; Regem, and Jotham, and Geshan, and Pelet, and Ephah, and Shaaph. 48 Maachah, Caleb's concubine, bare Sheber, and Tirhanah. 49 She bare also Shaaph the father of Madmannah, Sheva the father of Machbenah, and the father of Gibea: and the daughter of Caleb was Achsah. 50 These were the sons of Caleb the son of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah; Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim, 51 Salma the father of Bethlehem, Hareph the father of Bethgader. 52 And Shobal the father of Kirjathjearim had sons; Haroeh, and half of the Manahethites. 53 And the families of Kirjathjearim; the Ithrites, and the Puhites, and the Shumathites, and the Mishraites; of them came the Zareathites, and the Eshtaulites. 54 The sons of Salma; Bethlehem, and the Netophathites, Ataroth, the house of Joab, and half of the Manahethites, the Zorites. 55 And the families of the scribes which dwelt at Jabez; the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, and Suchathites. These are the Kenites that came of Hemath, the father of the house of Rechab.

Chapter Three

David’s sons from Hebron

1 Now these were the sons of David, which were born unto him in Hebron; the firstborn Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess; the second Daniel, of Abigail the Carmelitess:

 David reigned in Hebron for seven years and six months.

Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess: See 1st Samuel 25:43.

Daniel, of Abigail the Carmelitess: 1st Samuel 25:3.

2 The third, Absalom the son of Maachah the daughter of Talmai king of Geshur: the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith:

Absalom the son of Maachah: 1st Kings 2:39. The daughter of the king of Gath.

Adonijah the son of Haggith: He tried to be king. See 1st Kings 1:5.

3 The fifth, Shephatiah of Abital: the sixth, Ithream by Eglah his wife.

Shephatiah of Abital: See 2nd Samuel 3:4.

Ithream by Eglah his wife: See 2nd Samuel 3:5.

4 These six were born unto him in Hebron; and there he reigned seven years and six months: and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years.

These were born unto him in Jerusalem

5 And these were born unto him in Jerusalem; Shimea, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon, four, of Bathshua the daughter of Ammiel:

Shimea: He was named after David’s brother. See 2nd Samuel 21:21.

Shobab: See 2nd Samuel 5:14.

Nathan: It is through Nathan’s lineage that the Messiah was born, Solomon’s lineage was cursed. See Luke 3:31.

Solomon: Solomon’s lineage was cursed with Coniah just before Israel going into captivity.

Bathshua: She is also called Bathsheba. Her father’s name was Ammiel.

6 Ibhar also, and Elishama, and Eliphelet, 7 And Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia, 8 And Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphelet, nine.

 Notice that two of the sons of David were both called Eliphelet, that was because David took new wives and concubines in Jerusalem. The Eliphelet’s both had different mothers.

9 These were all the sons of David, beside the sons of the concubines, and Tamar their sister.

Tamar their sister: She was the sister of Absalom and half-sister of Amnon. She was the half-sister of the other four listed here, each having different mothers.

Solomon’s son

10 And Solomon's son was Rehoboam, Abia his son, Asa his son, Jehoshaphat his son, 11 Joram his son, Ahaziah his son, Joash his son, 12 Amaziah his son, Azariah his son, Jotham his son, 13 Ahaz his son, Hezekiah his son, Manasseh his son, 14 Amon his son, Josiah his son.

The sons of Josiah

15 And the sons of Josiah were, the firstborn Johanan, the second Jehoiakim, the third Zedekiah, the fourth Shallum.

The sons of Jehoiakim

16 And the sons of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son.

The sons of Jeconiah

17 And the sons of Jeconiah; Assir, Salathiel his son, 18 Malchiram also, and Pedaiah, and Shenazar, Jecamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

The sons of Pedaiah

19 And the sons of Pedaiah were, Zerubbabel, and Shimei: and the sons of Zerubbabel; Meshullam, and Hananiah, and Shelomith their sister: 20 And Hashubah, and Ohel, and Berechiah, and Hasadiah, Jushabhesed, five.

The sons of Hananiah

21 And the sons of Hananiah; Pelatiah, and Jesaiah: the sons of Rephaiah, the sons of Arnan, the sons of Obadiah, the sons of Shechaniah.

The sons of Shechaniah

 22 And the sons of Shechaniah; Shemaiah: and the sons of Shemaiah; Hattush, and Igeal, and Bariah, and Neariah, and Shaphat, six.

The sons of Neariah

23 And the sons of Neariah; Elioenai, and Hezekiah, and Azrikam, three.

The sons of Elioenai

24 And the sons of Elioenai were, Hodaiah, and Eliashib, and Pelaiah, and Akkub, and Johanan, and Dalaiah, and Anani, seven.

Chapter Four

The kingly lineage

The sons of Judah

1 The sons of Judah; Pharez, Hezron, and Carmi, and Hur, and Shobal.

Reaiah

2 And Reaiah the son of Shobal begat Jahath; and Jahath begat Ahumai, and Lahad. These are the families of the Zorathites.

Etam

3 And these were of the father of Etam; Jezreel, and Ishma, and Idbash: and the name of their sister was Hazelelponi:

The sons of Hur

4 And Penuel the father of Gedor, and Ezer the father of Hushah. These are the sons of Hur, the firstborn of Ephratah, the father of Bethlehem.

Hur: The father of Bethlehem. See also 1st Chronicles 2:51. One is the father of Bethlehem while the other if the great grandfather of Bethlehem.

The sons of Naarah

5 And Ashur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah. 6 And Naarah bare him Ahuzam, and Hepher, and Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were the sons of Naarah.

The sons of Helah

7 And the sons of Helah were, Zereth, and Jezoar, and Ethnan. 8 And Coz begat Anub, and Zobebah, and the families of Aharhel the son of Harum.

Jabez

9 And Jabez was more honourable than his brethren: and his mother called his name Jabez, saying,

“Because I bare him with sorrow.”

10 And Jabez called on the God of Israel, saying,

“Oh that thou wouldest bless me indeed, and enlarge my coast, and that thine hand might be with me, and that thou wouldest keep me from evil, that it may not grieve me!”

And God granted him that which he requested.

11 And Chelub the brother of Shuah begat Mehir, which was the father of Eshton. 12 And Eshton begat Bethrapha, and Paseah, and Tehinnah the father of Irnahash. These are the men of Rechah. 13 And the sons of Kenaz; Othniel, and Seraiah: and the sons of Othniel; Hathath. 14 And Meonothai begat Ophrah: and Seraiah begat Joab, the father of the valley of Charashim; for they were craftsmen. 15 And the sons of Caleb the son of Jephunneh; Iru, Elah, and Naam: and the sons of Elah, even Kenaz. 16 And the sons of Jehaleleel; Ziph, and Ziphah, Tiria, and Asareel. 17 And the sons of Ezra were, Jether, and Mered, and Epher, and Jalon: and she bare Miriam, and Shammai, and Ishbah the father of Eshtemoa. 18 And his wife Jehudijah bare Jered the father of Gedor, and Heber the father of Socho, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah. And these are the sons of Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, which Mered took. 19 And the sons of his wife Hodiah the sister of Naham, the father of Keilah the Garmite, and Eshtemoa the Maachathite. 20 And the sons of Shimon were, Amnon, and Rinnah, Benhanan, and Tilon. And the sons of Ishi were, Zoheth, and Benzoheth.

The sons of Shelah

21 The sons of Shelah the son of Judah were, Er the father of Lecah, and Laadah the father of Mareshah, and the families of the house of them that wrought fine linen, of the house of Ashbea, 22 And Jokim, and the men of Chozeba, and Joash, and Saraph, who had the dominion in Moab, and Jashubilehem. And these are ancient things. 23 These were the potters, and those that dwelt among plants and hedges: there they dwelt with the king for his work.

 This ends the section of the sons of Judah which began in chapter 2:3.

The sons of Simeon

24 The sons of Simeon were, Nemuel, and Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul: 25 Shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son. 26 And the sons of Mishma; Hamuel his son, Zacchur his son, Shimei his son. 27 And Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters; but his brethren had not many children, neither did all their family multiply, like to the children of Judah.

Their cities

28 And they dwelt at Beersheba, and Moladah, and Hazarshual, 29 And at Bilhah, and at Ezem, and at Tolad, 30 And at Bethuel, and at Hormah, and at Ziklag, 31 And at Bethmarcaboth, and Hazarsusim, and at Bethbirei, and at Shaaraim. These were their cities unto the reign of David.

Their villages

32 And their villages were, Etam, and Ain, Rimmon, and Tochen, and Ashan, five cities: 33 And all their villages that were round about the same cities, unto Baal. These were their habitations, and their genealogy. 34 And Meshobab, and Jamlech, and Joshah the son of Amaziah, 35 And Joel, and Jehu the son of Josibiah, the son of Seraiah, the son of Asiel, 36 And Elioenai, and Jaakobah, and Jeshohaiah, and Asaiah, and Adiel, and Jesimiel, and Benaiah, 37 And Ziza the son of Shiphi, the son of Allon, the son of Jedaiah, the son of Shimri, the son of Shemaiah;

The entrance of Gedor

38 These mentioned by their names were princes in their families: and the house of their fathers increased greatly. 39 And they went to the entrance of Gedor, even unto the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks.

The entrance of Gedor: Between Bethlehem and Hebron.

40 And they found fat pasture and good, and the land was wide, and quiet, and peaceable; for they of Ham had dwelt there of old.

They of Ham: The descendants of Ham, the second son of Noah.

41 And these written by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and smote their tents, and the habitations that were found there, and destroyed them utterly unto this day, and dwelt in their rooms: because there was pasture there for their flocks. 42 And some of them, even of the sons of Simeon, five hundred men, went to mount Seir, having for their captains Pelatiah, and Neariah, and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi. 43 And they smote the rest of the Amalekites that were escaped, and dwelt there unto this day.

Mount Seir: See Genesis 36:8.

Amalekites: See Genesis 14:7.

 This ends the section on the sons of Simeon which began in verse 24 of this chapter.

Chapter Five

The sons of Reuben

1 Now the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel, (for he was the firstborn; but, forasmuch as he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph the son of Israel: and the genealogy is not to be reckoned after the birthright. 2 For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph's:)

He defiled his father’s bed: See Genesis 35:22.

For Judah prevailed above his brethren: In that kings were to descend from the tribe of Judah rule over Israel.

His birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph: Because of Reuben’s sin God bypassed all the descendants of Leah and Jacob’s handmaids and gave the birthright to Rachel’s firstborn son and blessed him. See Genesis 30:22-24.

3 The sons, I say, of Reuben the firstborn of Israel were, Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. 4 The sons of Joel; Shemaiah his son, Gog his son, Shimei his son, 5 Micah his son, Reaia his son, Baal his son, 6 Beerah his son, whom Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria carried away captive: he was prince of the Reubenites. 7 And his brethren by their families, when the genealogy of their generations was reckoned, were the chief, Jeiel, and Zechariah, 8 And Bela the son of Azaz, the son of Shema, the son of Joel, who dwelt in Aroer, even unto Nebo and Baalmeon: 9 And eastward he inhabited unto the entering in of the wilderness from the river Euphrates: because their cattle were multiplied in the land of Gilead.

In the days of Saul

10 And in the days of Saul they made war with the Hagarites, who fell by their hand: and they dwelt in their tents throughout all the east land of Gilead.

The Hagarites: The descendants of Hagar’s son Ishmael.

The children of Gad

11 And the children of Gad dwelt over against them, in the land of Bashan unto Salchah: 12 Joel the chief, and Shapham the next, and Jaanai, and Shaphat in Bashan. 13 And their brethren of the house of their fathers were, Michael, and Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and Jachan, and Zia, and Heber, seven. 14 These are the children of Abihail the son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son of Buz; 15 Ahi the son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, chief of the house of their fathers. 16 And they dwelt in Gilead in Bashan, and in her towns, and in all the suburbs of Sharon, upon their borders. 17 All these were reckoned by genealogies in the days of Jotham king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam king of Israel.

Rueben, the Gadites, and half the tribe of Manasseh

18 The sons of Reuben, and the Gadites, and half the tribe of Manasseh, of valiant men, men able to bear buckler and sword, and to shoot with bow, and skilful in war, were four and forty thousand seven hundred and threescore, that went out to the war.

War with the Hagarites

19 And they made war with the Hagarites, with Jetur, and Nephish, and Nodab. See Genesis 25:15.

20 And they were helped against them, and the Hagarites were delivered into their hand, and all that were with them: for they cried to God in the battle, and he was intreated of them; because they put their trust in him. 21 And they took away their cattle; of their camels fifty thousand, and of sheep two hundred and fifty thousand, and of asses two thousand, and of men an hundred thousand. 22 For there fell down many slain, because the war was of God. And they dwelt in their steads until the captivity.

The Hagarites: They are the descendants of Hagar’s son Ishmael.

The captivity: Israel was taken captive by Assyria seventy years before Judah was taken into Babylonian captivity.

The children of the half tribe of Manasseh

23 And the children of the half tribe of Manasseh dwelt in the land: they increased from Bashan unto Baalhermon and Senir, and unto mount Hermon. 24 And these were the heads of the house of their fathers, even Epher, and Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, and Jeremiah, and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel, mighty men of valour, famous men, and heads of the house of their fathers. 25 And they transgressed against the God of their fathers, and went a whoring after the gods of the people of the land, whom God destroyed before them.

He carried them away

26 And the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria, and the spirit of Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria, and he carried them away, even the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and brought them unto Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and to the river Gozan, unto this day.

Chapter Six

The sons of Levi

1 The sons of Levi; Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. 2 And the sons of Kohath; Amram, Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel. 3 And the children of Amram; Aaron, and Moses, and Miriam. The sons also of Aaron; Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. 4 Eleazar begat Phinehas, Phinehas begat Abishua, 5 And Abishua begat Bukki, and Bukki begat Uzzi, 6 And Uzzi begat Zerahiah, and Zerahiah begat Meraioth, 7 Meraioth begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub, 8 And Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat Ahimaaz, 9 And Ahimaaz begat Azariah, and Azariah begat Johanan, 10 And Johanan begat Azariah, (he it is that executed the priest's office in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem:) 11 And Azariah begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub, 12 And Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat Shallum, 13 And Shallum begat Hilkiah, and Hilkiah begat Azariah, 14 And Azariah begat Seraiah, and Seraiah begat Jehozadak, 15 And Jehozadak went into captivity, when the LORD carried away Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

Gershom, Kohath, and Merari

16 The sons of Levi; Gershom, Kohath, and Merari. 17 And these be the names of the sons of Gershom; Libni, and Shimei. 18 And the sons of Kohath were, Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel. 19 The sons of Merari; Mahli, and Mushi. And these are the families of the Levites according to their fathers. 20 Of Gershom; Libni his son, Jahath his son, Zimmah his son, 21 Joah his son, Iddo his son, Zerah his son, Jeaterai his son. 22 The sons of Kohath; Amminadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his son, 23 Elkanah his son, and Ebiasaph his son, and Assir his son, 24 Tahath his son, Uriel his son, Uzziah his son, and Shaul his son. 25 And the sons of Elkanah; Amasai, and Ahimoth. 26 As for Elkanah: the sons of Elkanah; Zophai his son, and Nahath his son, 27 Eliab his son, Jeroham his son, Elkanah his son. 28 And the sons of Samuel; the firstborn Vashni, and Abiah. 29 The sons of Merari; Mahli, Libni his son, Shimei his son, Uzza his son, 30 Shimea his son, Haggiah his son, Asaiah his son.

The service of song

31 And these are they whom David set over the service of song in the house of the LORD, after that the ark had rest. 32 And they ministered before the dwelling place of the tabernacle of the congregation with singing, until Solomon had built the house of the LORD in Jerusalem: and then they waited on their office according to their order. 33 And these are they that waited with their children. Of the sons of the Kohathites: Heman a singer, the son of Joel, the son of Shemuel, 34 The son of Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Eliel, the son of Toah, 35 The son of Zuph, the son of Elkanah, the son of Mahath, the son of Amasai, 36 The son of Elkanah, the son of Joel, the son of Azariah, the son of Zephaniah, 37 The son of Tahath, the son of Assir, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, 38 The son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, the son of Israel. 39 And his brother Asaph, who stood on his right hand, even Asaph the son of Berachiah, the son of Shimea, 40 The son of Michael, the son of Baaseiah, the son of Malchiah, 41 The son of Ethni, the son of Zerah, the son of Adaiah, 42 The son of Ethan, the son of Zimmah, the son of Shimei, 43 The son of Jahath, the son of Gershom, the son of Levi. 44 And their brethren the sons of Merari stood on the left hand: Ethan the son of Kishi, the son of Abdi, the son of Malluch, 45 The son of Hashabiah, the son of Amaziah, the son of Hilkiah, 46 The son of Amzi, the son of Bani, the son of Shamer, 47 The son of Mahli, the son of Mushi, the son of Merari, the son of Levi. 48 Their brethren also the Levites were appointed unto all manner of service of the tabernacle of the house of God. 49 But Aaron and his sons offered upon the altar of the burnt offering, and on the altar of incense, and were appointed for all the work of the place most holy, and to make an atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded. 50 And these are the sons of Aaron; Eleazar his son, Phinehas his son, Abishua his son, 51 Bukki his son, Uzzi his son, Zerahiah his son, 52 Meraioth his son, Amariah his son, Ahitub his son, 53 Zadok his son, Ahimaaz his son.

Their dwelling places

54 Now these are their dwelling places throughout their castles in their coasts, of the sons of Aaron, of the families of the Kohathites: for theirs was the lot. 55 And they gave them Hebron in the land of Judah, and the suburbs thereof round about it. 56 But the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, they gave to Caleb the son of Jephunneh.

The sons of Aaron

57 And to the sons of Aaron they gave the cities of Judah, namely, Hebron, the city of refuge, and Libnah with her suburbs, and Jattir, and Eshtemoa, with their suburbs, 58 And Hilen with her suburbs, Debir with her suburbs, 59 And Ashan with her suburbs, and Bethshemesh with her suburbs:

Bethshemesh: The name means the house of the Sun.

60 And out of the tribe of Benjamin; Geba with her suburbs, and Alemeth with her suburbs, and Anathoth with her suburbs. All their cities throughout their families were thirteen cities.

The sons of Kohath

61 And unto the sons of Kohath, which were left of the family of that tribe, were cities given out of the half tribe, namely, out of the half tribe of Manasseh, by lot, ten cities.

The sons of Gershom

62 And to the sons of Gershom throughout their families out of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.

The sons of Merari

63 Unto the sons of Merari were given by lot, throughout their families, out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.

The Levites

64 And the children of Israel gave to the Levites these cities with their suburbs. 65 And they gave by lot out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, and out of the tribe of the children of Benjamin, these cities, which are called by their names. 66 And the residue of the families of the sons of Kohath had cities of their coasts out of the tribe of Ephraim.

Cities of refuge

67 And they gave unto them, of the cities of refuge, Shechem in mount Ephraim with her suburbs; they gave also Gezer with her suburbs,

Shechem: One of the six cities of refuge.

Gezer: One of the six cities of refuge.

68 And Jokmeam with her suburbs, and Bethhoron with her suburbs, 69 And Aijalon with her suburbs, and Gathrimmon with her suburbs:

Out of the half tribe of Manasseh

70 And out of the half tribe of Manasseh; Aner with her suburbs, and Bileam with her suburbs, for the family of the remnant of the sons of Kohath. 71 Unto the sons of Gershom were given out of the family of the half tribe of Manasseh, Golan in Bashan with her suburbs, and Ashtaroth with her suburbs:

Golan: One of the six cities of refuge.

Ashtaroth: Also the name of a pagan idol. The town was probably named after her.

Out of the tribe of Issachar

72 And out of the tribe of Issachar; Kedesh with her suburbs, Daberath with her suburbs, 73 And Ramoth with her suburbs, and Anem with her suburbs:

Kadesh: One of the six cities of refuge.

Ramoth: One of the six cities of refuge.

Out of the tribe of Asher

74 And out of the tribe of Asher; Mashal with her suburbs, and Abdon with her suburbs, 75 And Hukok with her suburbs, and Rehob with her suburbs:

Out of the tribe of Naphtali

76 And out of the tribe of Naphtali; Kedesh in Galilee with her suburbs, and Hammon with her suburbs, and Kirjathaim with her suburbs.

Out of the tribe of Zebulun

77 Unto the rest of the children of Merari were given out of the tribe of Zebulun, Rimmon with her suburbs, Tabor with her suburbs:

Out of the tribe of Reuben

78 And on the other side Jordan by Jericho, on the east side of Jordan, were given them out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer in the wilderness with her suburbs, and Jahzah with her suburbs,

Bezer: One of six cities of refuge.

79 Kedemoth also with her suburbs, and Mephaath with her suburbs:

Out of the tribe of Gad

80 And out of the tribe of Gad; Ramoth in Gilead with her suburbs, and Mahanaim with her suburbs, 81 And Heshbon with her suburbs, and Jazer with her suburbs.

Chapter Seven

The sons of Issachar

1 Now the sons of Issachar were, Tola, and Puah, Jashub, and Shimron, four. 2 And the sons of Tola; Uzzi, and Rephaiah, and Jeriel, and Jahmai, and Jibsam, and Shemuel, heads of their father's house, to wit, of Tola: they were valiant men of might in their generations; whose number was in the days of David two and twenty thousand and six hundred. 3 And the sons of Uzzi; Izrahiah: and the sons of Izrahiah; Michael, and Obadiah, and Joel, Ishiah, five: all of them chief men. 4 And with them, by their generations, after the house of their fathers, were bands of soldiers for war, six and thirty thousand men: for they had many wives and sons. 5 And their brethren among all the families of Issachar were valiant men of might, reckoned in all by their genealogies fourscore and seven thousand.

To wit: More specifically, or to be precise.

The sons of Benjamin

6 The sons of Benjamin; Bela, and Becher, and Jediael, three. 7 And the sons of Bela; Ezbon, and Uzzi, and Uzziel, and Jerimoth, and Iri, five; heads of the house of their fathers, mighty men of valour; and were reckoned by their genealogies twenty and two thousand and thirty and four. 8 And the sons of Becher; Zemira, and Joash, and Eliezer, and Elioenai, and Omri, and Jerimoth, and Abiah, and Anathoth, and Alameth. All these are the sons of Becher. 9 And the number of them, after their genealogy by their generations, heads of the house of their fathers, mighty men of valour, was twenty thousand and two hundred. 10 The sons also of Jediael; Bilhan: and the sons of Bilhan; Jeush, and Benjamin, and Ehud, and Chenaanah, and Zethan, and Tharshish, and Ahishahar. 11 All these the sons of Jediael, by the heads of their fathers, mighty men of valour, were seventeen thousand and two hundred soldiers, fit to go out for war and battle. 12 Shuppim also, and Huppim, the children of Ir, and Hushim, the sons of Aher.

The sons of Naphthali

13 The sons of Naphtali; Jahziel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shallum, the sons of Bilhah.

The sons of Manasseh

14 The sons of Manasseh; Ashriel, whom she bare: (but his concubine the Aramitess bare Machir the father of Gilead: 15 And Machir took to wife the sister of Huppim and Shuppim, whose sister's name was Maachah;) and the name of the second was Zelophehad: and Zelophehad had daughters. 16 And Maachah the wife of Machir bare a son, and she called his name Peresh; and the name of his brother was Sheresh; and his sons were Ulam and Rakem. 17 And the sons of Ulam; Bedan. These were the sons of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh. 18 And his sister Hammoleketh bare Ishod, and Abiezer, and Mahalah. 19 And the sons of Shemida were, Ahian, and Shechem, and Likhi, and Aniam.

The sons of Ephraim

20 And the sons of Ephraim; Shuthelah, and Bered his son, and Tahath his son, and Eladah his son, and Tahath his son, 21 And Zabad his son, and Shuthelah his son, and Ezer, and Elead, whom the men of Gath that were born in that land slew, because they came down to take away their cattle. 22 And Ephraim their father mourned many days, and his brethren came to comfort him. 23 And when he went in to his wife, she conceived, and bare a son, and he called his name Beriah, because it went evil with his house. 24) And his daughter was Sherah, who built Bethhoron the nether, and the upper, and Uzzensherah.)

Bethhoron the nether: The lower part of the city of Bethhoron.

25 And Rephah was his son, also Resheph, and Telah his son, and Tahan his son, 26 Laadan his son, Ammihud his son, Elishama his son, 27 Non his son, Jehoshua his son.

Non his son: Nun.

Jehoshua: Joshua.

28 And their possessions and habitations were, Bethel and the towns thereof, and eastward Naaran, and westward Gezer, with the towns thereof; Shechem also and the towns thereof, unto Gaza and the towns thereof: 29 And by the borders of the children of Manasseh, Bethshean and her towns, Taanach and her towns, Megiddo and her towns, Dor and her towns. In these dwelt the children of Joseph the son of Israel.

The sons of Asher

30 The sons of Asher; Imnah, and Isuah, and Ishuai, and Beriah, and Serah their sister. 31 And the sons of Beriah; Heber, and Malchiel, who is the father of Birzavith. 32 And Heber begat Japhlet, and Shomer, and Hotham, and Shua their sister. 33 And the sons of Japhlet; Pasach, and Bimhal, and Ashvath. These are the children of Japhlet. 34 And the sons of Shamer; Ahi, and Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram. 35 And the sons of his brother Helem; Zophah, and Imna, and Shelesh, and Amal. 36 The sons of Zophah; Suah, and Harnepher, and Shual, and Beri, and Imrah, 37 Bezer, and Hod, and Shamma, and Shilshah, and Ithran, and Beera. 38 And the sons of Jether; Jephunneh, and Pispah, and Ara. 39 And the sons of Ulla; Arah, and Haniel, and Rezia. 40 All these were the children of Asher, heads of their father's house, choice and mighty men of valour, chief of the princes. And the number throughout the genealogy of them that were apt to the war and to battle was twenty and six thousand men.

Chapter Eight

Benjamin begat

1 Now Benjamin begat Bela his firstborn, Ashbel the second, and Aharah the third, 2 Nohah the fourth, and Rapha the fifth. 3 And the sons of Bela were, Addar, and Gera, and Abihud, 4 And Abishua, and Naaman, and Ahoah, 5 And Gera, and Shephuphan, and Huram. 6 And these are the sons of Ehud: these are the heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Geba, and they removed them to Manahath: 7 And Naaman, and Ahiah, and Gera, he removed them, and begat Uzza, and Ahihud. 8 And Shaharaim begat children in the country of Moab, after he had sent them away; Hushim and Baara were his wives. 9 And he begat of Hodesh his wife, Jobab, and Zibia, and Mesha, and Malcham, 10 And Jeuz, and Shachia, and Mirma. These were his sons, heads of the fathers. 11 And of Hushim he begat Abitub, and Elpaal. 12 The sons of Elpaal; Eber, and Misham, and Shamed, who built Ono, and Lod, with the towns thereof: 13 Beriah also, and Shema, who were heads of the fathers of the inhabitants of Aijalon, who drove away the inhabitants of Gath: 14 And Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth, 15 And Zebadiah, and Arad, and Ader, 16 And Michael, and Ispah, and Joha, the sons of Beriah; 17 And Zebadiah, and Meshullam, and Hezeki, and Heber, 18 Ishmerai also, and Jezliah, and Jobab, the sons of Elpaal; 19 And Jakim, and Zichri, and Zabdi, 20 And Elienai, and Zilthai, and Eliel, 21 And Adaiah, and Beraiah, and Shimrath, the sons of Shimhi; 22 And Ishpan, and Heber, and Eliel, 23 And Abdon, and Zichri, and Hanan, 24 And Hananiah, and Elam, and Antothijah, 25 And Iphedeiah, and Penuel, the sons of Shashak; 26 And Shamsherai, and Shehariah, and Athaliah, 27 And Jaresiah, and Eliah, and Zichri, the sons of Jeroham. 28 These were heads of the fathers, by their generations, chief men. These dwelt in Jerusalem. 29 And at Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon; whose wife's name was Maachah: 30 And his firstborn son Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Nadab, 31 And Gedor, and Ahio, and Zacher. 32 And Mikloth begat Shimeah. And these also dwelt with their brethren in Jerusalem, over against them. 33 And Ner begat Kish, and Kish begat Saul, and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal. 34 And the son of Jonathan was Meribbaal; and Meribbaal begat Micah. 35 And the sons of Micah were, Pithon, and Melech, and Tarea, and Ahaz. 36 And Ahaz begat Jehoadah; and Jehoadah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza, 37 And Moza begat Binea: Rapha was his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son: 38 And Azel had six sons, whose names are these, Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were the sons of Azel. 39 And the sons of Eshek his brother were, Ulam his firstborn, Jehush the second, and Eliphelet the third. 40 And the sons of Ulam were mighty men of valour, archers, and had many sons, and sons' sons, an hundred and fifty. All these are of the sons of Benjamin.

Chapter Nine

The Israelites, the priests, Levites and the Nethinims

1 So all Israel were reckoned by genealogies; and, behold, they were written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah, who were carried away to Babylon for their transgression. 2 Now the first inhabitants that dwelt in their possessions in their cities were, the Israelites, the priests, Levites, and the Nethinims.

The Nethinims: The word means gifts. They were temple servants and they lived in Ophel.

3 And in Jerusalem dwelt of the children of Judah, and of the children of Benjamin, and of the children of Ephraim, and Manasseh; 4 Uthai the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, of the children of Pharez the son of Judah. 5 And of the Shilonites; Asaiah the firstborn, and his sons. 6 And of the sons of Zerah; Jeuel, and their brethren, six hundred and ninety. 7 And of the sons of Benjamin; Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son of Hasenuah, 8 And Ibneiah the son of Jeroham, and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri, and Meshullam the son of Shephathiah, the son of Reuel, the son of Ibnijah; 9 And their brethren, according to their generations, nine hundred and fifty and six. All these men were chief of the fathers in the house of their fathers.

The priests

10 And of the priests; Jedaiah, and Jehoiarib, and Jachin, 11 And Azariah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the house of God; 12 And Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchijah, and Maasiai the son of Adiel, the son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer; 13 And their brethren, heads of the house of their fathers, a thousand and seven hundred and threescore; very able men for the work of the service of the house of God.

The Levites

14 And of the Levites; Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, of the sons of Merari; 15 And Bakbakkar, Heresh, and Galal, and Mattaniah the son of Micah, the son of Zichri, the son of Asaph; 16 And Obadiah the son of Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun, and Berechiah the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, that dwelt in the villages of the Netophathites.

The Porters

17 And the porters were, Shallum, and Akkub, and Talmon, and Ahiman, and their brethren: Shallum was the chief; 18 Who hitherto waited in the king's gate eastward: they were porters in the companies of the children of Levi. 19 And Shallum the son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, and his brethren, of the house of his father, the Korahites, were over the work of the service, keepers of the gates of the tabernacle: and their fathers, being over the host of the LORD, were keepers of the entry. 20 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar was the ruler over them in time past, and the LORD was with him. 21 And Zechariah the son of Meshelemiah was porter of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. 22 All these which were chosen to be porters in the gates were two hundred and twelve. These were reckoned by their genealogy in their villages, whom David and Samuel the seer did ordain in their set office. 23 So they and their children had the oversight of the gates of the house of the LORD, namely, the house of the tabernacle, by wards. 24 In four quarters were the porters, toward the east, west, north, and south. 25 And their brethren, which were in their villages, were to come after seven days from time to time with them. 26 For these Levites, the four chief porters, were in their set office, and were over the chambers and treasuries of the house of God. 27 And they lodged round about the house of God, because the charge was upon them, and the opening thereof every morning pertained to them. 28 And certain of them had the charge of the ministering vessels, that they should bring them in and out by tale. 29 Some of them also were appointed to oversee the vessels, and all the instruments of the sanctuary, and the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, and the frankincense, and the spices. 30 And some of the sons of the priests made the ointment of the spices. 31 And Mattithiah, one of the Levites, who was the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, had the set office over the things that were made in the pans. 32 And other of their brethren, of the sons of the Kohathites, were over the shewbread, to prepare it every sabbath. 33 And these are the singers, chief of the fathers of the Levites, who remaining in the chambers were free: for they were employed in that work day and night. 34 These chief fathers of the Levites were chief throughout their generations; these dwelt at Jerusalem.

Kish begat Saul; and Saul begat Jonathan

35 And in Gibeon dwelt the father of Gibeon, Jehiel, whose wife's name was Maachah: 36 And his firstborn son Abdon, then Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab, 37 And Gedor, and Ahio, and Zechariah, and Mikloth. 38 And Mikloth begat Shimeam. And they also dwelt with their brethren at Jerusalem, over against their brethren. 39 And Ner begat Kish; and Kish begat Saul; and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal. 40 And the son of Jonathan was Meribbaal: and Meribbaal begat Micah. 41 And the sons of Micah were, Pithon, and Melech, and Tahrea, and Ahaz. 42 And Ahaz begat Jarah; and Jarah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza; 43 And Moza begat Binea; and Rephaiah his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son. 44 And Azel had six sons, whose names are these, Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan: these were the sons of Azel.

Chapter Ten

The death of Saul

1 Now the Philistines fought against Israel; and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down slain in mount Gilboa. 2 And the Philistines followed hard after Saul, and after his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, the sons of Saul.

The men of Israel fled from before the Philistines: This was not because the Philistines were better soldiers but because it was God’s will that Saul would no longer rule as king of Israel.

Mount Gilboa: See story in 1st Samuel 28 – 2nd Samuel 1:27.

The sons of Saul: Saul’s youngest son Eshbaal was not killed in this battle where Saul and his other sons were killed. See 1st Chronicles 8:3 and 9:39.

3 And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers hit him, and he was wounded of the archers. 4 Then said Saul to his armourbearer,

“Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and abuse me.”

But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. So Saul took a sword, and fell upon it.

For he was sore afraid: He would not kill the LORD’s anointed king even though God had rejected him. See 1st Samuel 24:10.

5 And when his armourbearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell likewise on the sword, and died. 6 So Saul died, and his three sons, and all his house died together.

 When all seemed lost individuals would kill themselves so they would not be tortured by the enemy.

All his house died together: Eshbaal and one of Jonathan’s sons survived.

7 And when all the men of Israel that were in the valley saw that they fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, then they forsook their cities, and fled: and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.

 The Philistines originated in Egypt and conquered what would be called the five cities of the Philistines on the southwest coast of land given to the children of Israel.

8 And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his sons fallen in mount Gilboa.

They took his head

9 And when they had stripped him, they took his head, and his armour, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to carry tidings unto their idols, and to the people. 10 And they put his armour in the house of their gods, and fastened his head in the temple of Dagon.

Dagon: The fish god of the Philistines. This action was to motivate his followers into thinking Dagon was more powerful than Israel’s god. God had abandoned Saul many years ago for David.

11 And when all Jabeshgilead heard all that the Philistines had done to Saul, 12 They arose, all the valiant men, and took away the body of Saul, and the bodies of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh, and buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

Jabeshgilead: A city in the land allotted to the tribe of Benjamin. The men took the bodies of Saul and Jonathan but not the head of Saul that remained in the temple of Dagan.

13 So Saul died for his transgression which he committed against the LORD, even against the word of the LORD, which he kept not, and also for asking counsel of one that had a familiar spirit, to enquire of it; 14 And enquired not of the LORD: therefore he slew him, and turned the kingdom unto David the son of Jesse.

Saul died for his transgression: For not killing king Agag and for offering a sacrifice in Samuel’s place.

For asking counsel of one that had a familiar spirit: Saul went to the witch of Endor and asked her to bring up Samuel.

Chapter Eleven

David is king over all Israel

1 Then all Israel gathered themselves to David unto Hebron, saying,

“Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh. 2 And moreover in time past, even when Saul was king, thou wast he that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and the LORD thy God said unto thee, Thou shalt feed my people Israel, and thou shalt be ruler over my people Israel.”

See 2nd Samuel 7:7

Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh: We are all the children of Israel, and so we are all family.

He that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: David led Israel in battle, and he brought them home again after it. Saul did not.

3 Therefore came all the elders of Israel to the king to Hebron; and David made a covenant with them in Hebron before the LORD; and they anointed David king over Israel, according to the word of the LORD by Samuel.

 Samuel was told to anoint David king over Israel as a young man back when he was watching his sheep. 1st Samuel 16:1.

4 And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem, which is Jebus; where the Jebusites were, the inhabitants of the land. 5 And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David,

“Thou shalt not come hither.”

Nevertheless David took the castle of Zion, which is the city of David. 6 And David said,

“Whosoever smiteth the Jebusites first shall be chief and captain.”

So Joab the son of Zeruiah went first up, and was chief. 7 And David dwelt in the castle; therefore they called it the city of David. 8 And he built the city round about, even from Millo round about: and Joab repaired the rest of the city.

Joab the son of Zeruiah: He was David’s sister’s son. His nephew.

Millo: Next to the city of David in Jerusalem.

9 So David waxed greater and greater: for the LORD of hosts was with him. 10 These also are the chief of the mighty men whom David had, who strengthened themselves with him in his kingdom, and with all Israel, to make him king, according to the word of the LORD concerning Israel.

The LORD of hosts: The LORD (Captain) of angelic armies.

The mighty men

11 And this is the number of the mighty men whom David had; Jashobeam, an Hachmonite, the chief of the captains: he lifted up his spear against three hundred slain by him at one time.

Jashobeam, an Hachmonite: The son of Hachomoni. 1st Chronicles 27:32.

12 And after him was Eleazar the son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who was one of the three mighties.

The three mighties: They were Jashobeam, Eleazar and Benaiah.

13 He was with David at Pasdammim, and there the Philistines were gathered together to battle, where was a parcel of ground full of barley; and the people fled from before the Philistines. 14 And they set themselves in the midst of that parcel, and delivered it, and slew the Philistines; and the LORD saved them by a great deliverance.

Eleazor the son of Dodo: See 2nd Samuel 23:9. He was from Bethlehem.

The Ahohite: See 1st Chronicle 8:4.

Pasdammim: (Ephesdammim) Between Azeka and Shochoh. 1st Samuel 17:1.

15 Now three of the thirty captains went down to the rock to David, into the cave of Adullam; and the host of the Philistines encamped in the valley of Rephaim.

The rock: Another name for the cave of Adullam. See 2nd Samuel 23:13.

The cave of Adullam: Where David hid from Saul.

The valley of Rephaim: See Genesis 14:5 & 2nd Samuel 23:13. The valley of giants. Also spelled Rephaims.

16 And David was then in the hold, and the Philistines' garrison was then at Bethlehem. 17 And David longed, and said,

“Oh that one would give me drink of the water of the well of Bethlehem, that is at the gate!”

In the hold: Hold up in the cave of Adullam.

18 And the three brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David: but David would not drink of it, but poured it out to the LORD, 19 And said,

“My God forbid it me, that I should do this thing: shall I drink the blood of these men that have put their lives in jeopardy? for with the jeopardy of their lives they brought it.”

Therefore he would not drink it. These things did these three mightiest.

Abishai

20 And Abishai the brother of Joab, he was chief of the three: for lifting up his spear against three hundred, he slew them, and had a name among the three. 21 Of the three, he was more honourable than the two; for he was their captain: howbeit he attained not to the first three.

Abishai the brother of Joab: David’s sister’s sons. The Third sone was Asahel but he was slain by Abner with a spear.

The three: The three who got David water from Bethlehem.

The first three: Jashobeam, Eleazar, and Benaiah.

Benaiah

22 Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man of Kabzeel, who had done many acts; he slew two lionlike men of Moab: also he went down and slew a lion in a pit in a snowy day. 23 And he slew an Egyptian, a man of great stature, five cubits high; and in the Egyptian's hand was a spear like a weaver's beam; and he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear.

Five cubits high: This is seven feet five inches tall. That would have made him very tall but most of the giants were between nine and twelve feet tall.

24 These things did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had the name among the three mighties. 25 Behold, he was honourable among the thirty, but attained not to the first three: and David set him over his guard.

A man of great stature, five cubits high: Seven feet six inches tall. The cubit is eighteen inches. A smaller giant.

The valiant men of the armies

26 Also the valiant men of the armies were, Asahel the brother of Joab, Elhanan the son of Dodo of Bethlehem,

Asahel: He was killed by Abner later on.

27 Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite, 28 Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite, Abiezer the Antothite, 29 Sibbecai the Hushathite, Ilai the Ahohite, 30 Maharai the Netophathite, Heled the son of Baanah the Netophathite, 31 Ithai the son of Ribai of Gibeah, that pertained to the children of Benjamin, Benaiah the Pirathonite, 32 Hurai of the brooks of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite, 33 Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite, 34 The sons of Hashem the Gizonite, Jonathan the son of Shage the Hararite, 35 Ahiam the son of Sacar the Hararite, Eliphal the son of Ur, 36 Hepher the Mecherathite, Ahijah the Pelonite, 37 Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai the son of Ezbai, 38 Joel the brother of Nathan, Mibhar the son of Haggeri, 39 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite, the armourbearer of Joab the son of Zeruiah,

Naharai: the Berothite: See also 2nd Samuel 23:37. Joab is the captain of the host of Israel and Zeruiah is David’s sister.

40 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite, 41 Uriah the Hittite, Zabad the son of Ahlai, 42 Adina the son of Shiza the Reubenite, a captain of the Reubenites, and thirty with him, 43 Hanan the son of Maachah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite, 44 Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jehiel the sons of Hothan the Aroerite, 45 Jediael the son of Shimri, and Joha his brother, the Tizite, 46 Eliel the Mahavite, and Jeribai, and Joshaviah, the sons of Elnaam, and Ithmah the Moabite, 47 Eliel, and Obed, and Jasiel the Mesobaite.

Chapter Twelve

The children of Benjamin

1 Now these are they that came to David to Ziklag, while he yet kept himself close because of Saul the son of Kish: and they were among the mighty men, helpers of the war. 2 They were armed with bows, and could use both the right hand and the left in hurling stones and shooting arrows out of a bow, even of Saul's brethren of Benjamin.

Ziklag: A city belonging to the tribe of Judah.

Saul’s brethren of Benjamin: People from the tribe of Benjamin who were loyal to David.

Saul’s brethren of Benjamin

3 The chief was Ahiezer, then Joash, the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite; and Jeziel, and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth; and Berachah, and Jehu the Antothite, 4 And Ismaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty man among the thirty, and over the thirty; and Jeremiah, and Jahaziel, and Johanan, and Josabad the Gederathite, 5 Eluzai, and Jerimoth, and Bealiah, and Shemariah, and Shephatiah the Haruphite, 6 Elkanah, and Jesiah, and Azareel, and Joezer, and Jashobeam, the Korhites, 7 And Joelah, and Zebadiah, the sons of Jeroham of Gedor.

The Gadites

8 And of the Gadites there separated themselves unto David into the hold to the wilderness men of might, and men of war fit for the battle, that could handle shield and buckler, whose faces were like the faces of lions, and were as swift as the roes upon the mountains;

Buckler: The smaller shield on the hand with the sword.

9 Ezer the first, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third, 10 Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth, 11 Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh, 12 Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth, 13 Jeremiah the tenth, Machbanai the eleventh. 14 These were of the sons of Gad, captains of the host: one of the least was over an hundred, and the greatest over a thousand. 15 These are they that went over Jordan in the first month, when it had overflown all his banks; and they put to flight all them of the valleys, both toward the east, and toward the west.

In the first month: The first month on the Jewish calendar is in the spring. The month of Adar.

16 And there came of the children of Benjamin and Judah to the hold unto David. 17 And David went out to meet them, and answered and said unto them,

“If ye be come peaceably unto me to help me, mine heart shall be knit unto you: but if ye be come to betray me to mine enemies, seeing there is no wrong in mine hands, the God of our fathers look thereon, and rebuke it.

18 Then the spirit came upon Amasai, who was chief of the captains, and he said,

“Thine are we, David, and on thy side, thou son of Jesse: peace, peace be unto thee, and peace be to thine helpers; for thy God helpeth thee.”

Then the spirit came upon Amasi: The spirit spoke through Amasi guiding his words.

Some of Manasseh

Then David received them, and made them captains of the band. 19 And there fell some of Manasseh to David, when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle: but they helped them not: for the lords of the Philistines upon advisement sent him away, saying,

“He will fall to his master Saul to the jeopardy of our heads.”

See 1st Samuel.

There fell some of Manasseh to David: Some from the tribe of Manasseh joined David.

He will fall to his master: He will bow to him and serve him again.

20 As he went to Ziklag, there fell to him of Manasseh, Adnah, and Jozabad, and Jediael, and Michael, and Jozabad, and Elihu, and Zilthai, captains of the thousands that were of Manasseh. 21 And they helped David against the band of the rovers: for they were all mighty men of valour, and were captains in the host. 22 For at that time day by day there came to David to help him, until it was a great host, like the host of God.

The band of rovers: Enemy raiders. See 1st Samuel 30:1.

The numbers of the bands

23 And these are the numbers of the bands that were ready armed to the war, and came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul to him, according to the word of the LORD.

The children of Judah

24 The children of Judah that bare shield and spear were six thousand and eight hundred, ready armed to the war.

The children of Simeon

25 Of the children of Simeon, mighty men of valour for the war, seven thousand and one hundred.

The children of Levi

26 Of the children of Levi four thousand and six hundred. 27 And Jehoiada was the leader of the Aaronites, and with him were three thousand and seven hundred; 28 And Zadok, a young man mighty of valour, and of his father's house twenty and two captains.

The children of Benjamin

29 And of the children of Benjamin, the kindred of Saul, three thousand: for hitherto the greatest part of them had kept the ward of the house of Saul.

The children of Ephraim

30 And of the children of Ephraim twenty thousand and eight hundred, mighty men of valour, famous throughout the house of their fathers.

The half tribe of Manasseh

31 And of the half tribe of Manasseh eighteen thousand, which were expressed by name, to come and make David king.

The children of Issachar

32 And of the children of Issachar, which were men that had understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do; the heads of them were two hundred; and all their brethren were at their commandment.

Of Zebulun

33 Of Zebulun, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, with all instruments of war, fifty thousand, which could keep rank: they were not of double heart.

Of Naphtali

34 And of Naphtali a thousand captains, and with them with shield and spear thirty and seven thousand.

The Danites

35 And of the Danites expert in war twenty and eight thousand and six hundred. 36 And of Asher, such as went forth to battle, expert in war, forty thousand.

The Reubenites, Gadites, and half tribe of Manasseh

37 And on the other side of Jordan, of the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and of the half tribe of Manasseh, with all manner of instruments of war for the battle, an hundred and twenty thousand.

The other side of Jordan: The east side of the Jordan river.

38 All these men of war, that could keep rank, came with a perfect heart to Hebron, to make David king over all Israel: and all the rest also of Israel were of one heart to make David king.

Of one heart: They all wanted David to be king.

39 And there they were with David three days, eating and drinking: for their brethren had prepared for them. 40 Moreover they that were nigh them, even unto Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali, brought bread on asses, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen, and meat, meal, cakes of figs, and bunches of raisins, and wine, and oil, and oxen, and sheep abundantly: for there was joy in Israel.

Chapter Thirteen

Let us bring again the ark of our God

1 And David consulted with the captains of thousands and hundreds, and with every leader. 2 And David said unto all the congregation of Israel,

“If it seem good unto you, and that it be of the LORD our God, let us send abroad unto our brethren every where, that are left in all the land of Israel, and with them also to the priests and Levites which are in their cities and suburbs, that they may gather themselves unto us: 3 And let us bring again the ark of our God to us: for we enquired not at it in the days of Saul.”

4 And all the congregation said that they would do so: for the thing was right in the eyes of all the people. 5 So David gathered all Israel together, from Shihor of Egypt even unto the entering of Hemath, to bring the ark of God from Kirjathjearim.

The thing was right in the eyes of all the people: They all wanted the ark brought to the heart of Israel, but they didn’t look to God’s word on how to do it.

6 And David went up, and all Israel, to Baalah, that is, to Kirjathjearim, which belonged to Judah, to bring up thence the ark of God the LORD, that dwelleth between the cherubims, whose name is called on it.

Kirjathjearim: Also known as Kirjathbaal. See Joshua 15:16.

The cherubims: The cherub (angels) that are on the mercy seat.

Whose name is called on it: The high priest would call upon God at the ark because God’s Spirit dwelled on it.

A new cart

7 And they carried the ark of God in a new cart out of the house of Abinadab: and Uzza and Ahio drave the cart. 8 And David and all Israel played before God with all their might, and with singing, and with harps, and with psalteries, and with timbrels, and with cymbals, and with trumpets. 9 And when they came unto the threshingfloor of Chidon, Uzza put forth his hand to hold the ark; for the oxen stumbled. 10 And the anger of the LORD was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him, because he put his hand to the ark: and there he died before God.

The house of Abinadab: David’s older brother who lived in Gibeah.

The threshing floor: A place where they separated the wheat from the chaff.

Uzza put forth his hand to hold the ark: This was forbidden in the Law of Moses. See Numbers 4:15 & 2nd Samuel 6:1-7.

The anger of the LORD was kindled: He anger was ignited.

11 And David was displeased, because the LORD had made a breach upon Uzza: wherefore that place is called Perezuzza to this day. 12 And David was afraid of God that day, saying,

“How shall I bring the ark of God home to me?”

Perezuzza: The breach of Uzza(h).

13 So David brought not the ark home to himself to the city of David, but carried it aside into the house of Obededom the Gittite. 14 And the ark of God remained with the family of Obededom in his house three months. And the LORD blessed the house of Obededom, and all that he had.

The Gittite: See 2nd Samuel 15:19. A stranger/Gentile. Goliath was a Gittite as well.

Chapter Fourteen

David’s house

1 Now Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and timber of cedars, with masons and carpenters, to build him an house. 2 And David perceived that the LORD had confirmed him king over Israel, for his kingdom was lifted up on high, because of his people Israel.

Hiram king of Tyre: He was the greatest builder of his day, and his land was full of Cedar trees for building.

David’s new wives

3 And David took more wives at Jerusalem: and David begat more sons and daughters. 4 Now these are the names of his children which he had in Jerusalem; Shammua, and Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon,

 The four above were all sons of David and Bathsheba in Jerusalem. The following nine were divided into three groups of three, each three had a different mother.

5 And Ibhar, and Elishua, and Elpalet,

6 And Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

7 And Elishama, and Beeliada, and Eliphalet.

David took more wives at Jerusalem: God told him and Solomon his sin not to multiply wives as the heathen did, but they did not listen to him. See Deuteronomy 17:17 and 2nd Samuel 5:13-16.

The valley of Rephaim

 8 And when the Philistines heard that David was anointed king over all Israel, all the Philistines went up to seek David. And David heard of it, and went out against them.

The Philistines went up to seek David: They went to defeat him in battle.

9 And the Philistines came and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim. 10 And David enquired of God, saying,

“Shall I go up against the Philistines? and wilt thou deliver them into mine hand?”

And the LORD said unto him,

“Go up; for I will deliver them into thine hand.”

11 So they came up to Baalperazim; and David smote them there. Then David said,

“God hath broken in upon mine enemies by mine hand like the breaking forth of waters:”

therefore they called the name of that place Baalperazim.

Baalperazim: The breaking forth of waters.

12 And when they had left their gods there, David gave a commandment, and they were burned with fire. 13 And the Philistines yet again spread themselves abroad in the valley. 14 Therefore David enquired again of God; and God said unto him,

“Go not up after them; turn away from them, and come upon them over against the mulberry trees. 15 And it shall be, when thou shalt hear a sound of going in the tops of the mulberry trees, that then thou shalt go out to battle: for God is gone forth before thee to smite the host of the Philistines.”

The mulberry trees

16 David therefore did as God commanded him: and they smote the host of the Philistines from Gibeon even to Gazer. 17 And the fame of David went out into all lands; and the LORD brought the fear of him upon all nations.

Chapter Fifteen

The ark of God

1 And David made him houses in the city of David, and prepared a place for the ark of God, and pitched for it a tent. 2 Then David said,

“None ought to carry the ark of God but the Levites: for them hath the LORD chosen to carry the ark of God, and to minister unto him for ever.”

Prepared a place for the ark of God: In the high place of mount Gilead. The ark carried the ten commandments, and Aaron’s rod that budded, and manna.

3 And David gathered all Israel together to Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the LORD unto his place, which he had prepared for it. 4 And David assembled the children of Aaron, and the Levites: 5 Of the sons of Kohath; Uriel the chief, and his brethren an hundred and twenty: 6 Of the sons of Merari; Asaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred and twenty: 7 Of the sons of Gershom; Joel the chief, and his brethren an hundred and thirty: 8 Of the sons of Elizaphan; Shemaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred: 9 Of the sons of Hebron; Eliel the chief, and his brethren fourscore: 10 Of the sons of Uzziel; Amminadab the chief, and his brethren an hundred and twelve. 11 And David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and for the Levites, for Uriel, Asaiah, and Joel, Shemaiah, and Eliel, and Amminadab, 12 And said unto them,

“Ye are the chief of the fathers of the Levites: sanctify yourselves, both ye and your brethren, that ye may bring up the ark of the LORD God of Israel unto the place that I have prepared for it. 13 For because ye did it not at the first, the LORD our God made a breach upon us, for that we sought him not after the due order.”

Sanctify yourselves: Make yourselves ritually clean, see what the LORD’s word says about the due order for transporting the ark properly.

God made a breach upon us: With Uzzah dying for touching the ark.

14 So the priests and the Levites sanctified themselves to bring up the ark of the LORD God of Israel.

The Levites sanctified themselves: They made themselves ritually clean through ritual washings (baths).

15 And the children of the Levites bare the ark of God upon their shoulders with the staves thereon, as Moses commanded according to the word of the LORD. See Exodus 25:13-14.

16 And David spake to the chief of the Levites to appoint their brethren to be the singers with instruments of musick, psalteries and harps and cymbals, sounding, by lifting up the voice with joy. 17 So the Levites appointed Heman the son of Joel; and of his brethren, Asaph the son of Berechiah; and of the sons of Merari their brethren, Ethan the son of Kushaiah; 18 And with them their brethren of the second degree, Zechariah, Ben, and Jaaziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, Eliab, and Benaiah, and Maaseiah, and Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obededom, and Jeiel, the porters. 19 So the singers, Heman, Asaph, and Ethan, were appointed to sound with cymbals of brass; 20 And Zechariah, and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, and Benaiah, with psalteries on Alamoth; 21 And Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obededom, and Jeiel, and Azaziah, with harps on the Sheminith to excel. 22 And Chenaniah, chief of the Levites, was for song: he instructed about the song, because he was skilful. 23 And Berechiah and Elkanah were doorkeepers for the ark.

The blowing of the trumpets

24 And Shebaniah, and Jehoshaphat, and Nethaneel, and Amasai, and Zechariah, and Benaiah, and Eliezer, the priests, did blow with the trumpets before the ark of God: and Obededom and Jehiah were doorkeepers for the ark. 25 So David, and the elders of Israel, and the captains over thousands, went to bring up the ark of the covenant of the LORD out of the house of Obededom with joy. 26 And it came to pass, when God helped the Levites that bare the ark of the covenant of the LORD, that they offered seven bullocks and seven rams.

An ephod of linen

27 And David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites that bare the ark, and the singers, and Chenaniah the master of the song with the singers: David also had upon him an ephod of linen.

An ephod of linen: Samuel ministered with one on as a child. It is a girdle that was used in worship of the LORD. See 1st Samuel 2:18 and 2nd Samuel 6:14.

The ark is brought up

28 Thus all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of the LORD with shouting, and with sound of the cornet, and with trumpets, and with cymbals, making a noise with psalteries and harps.

Michal despised David in her heart

2nd Samuel 6:16

29 And it came to pass, as the ark of the covenant of the LORD came to the city of David, that Michal the daughter of Saul looking out at a window saw king David dancing and playing: and she despised him in her heart.

Chapter Sixteen

The high place at Gideon

1 So they brought the ark of God, and set it in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it: and they offered burnt sacrifices and peace offerings before God. 2 And when David had made an end of offering the burnt offerings and the peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the LORD.

A loaf of bread, a piece of flesh, a flagon of wine

3 And he dealt to every one of Israel, both man and woman, to every one a loaf of bread, and a good piece of flesh, and a flagon of wine.

A peace of flesh: A piece of meat.

A flagon of wine: A canteen made out of goat’s skin.

4 And he appointed certain of the Levites to minister before the ark of the LORD, and to record, and to thank and praise the LORD God of Israel: 5 Asaph the chief, and next to him Zechariah, Jeiel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Mattithiah, and Eliab, and Benaiah, and Obededom: and Jeiel with psalteries and with harps; but Asaph made a sound with cymbals; 6 Benaiah also and Jahaziel the priests with trumpets continually before the ark of the covenant of God. 7 Then on that day David delivered first this psalm to thank the LORD into the hand of Asaph and his brethren.

And to record: Recorders.

A psalm of David

“8 Give thanks unto the LORD, call upon his name, make known his deeds among the people. 9 Sing unto him, sing psalms unto him, talk ye of all his wondrous works. 10 Glory ye in his holy name: let the heart of them rejoice that seek the LORD. 11 Seek the LORD and his strength, seek his face continually. 12 Remember his marvellous works that he hath done, his wonders, and the judgments of his mouth; 13 O ye seed of Israel his servant, ye children of Jacob, his chosen ones. 14 He is the LORD our God; his judgments are in all the earth. 15 Be ye mindful always of his covenant; the word which he commanded to a thousand generations;”

The word which he commanded to a thousand generations: A generation is forty years, so a thousand generations is forty thousand years. See Deuteronomy 7:9 and Psalms 105:8.

 Mankind has only been on the earth for 6,000 years and his covenant did not come to the children of Jacob for almost 2,000 years after that.

“16 Even of the covenant which he made with Abraham, and of his oath unto Isaac; 17 And hath confirmed the same to Jacob for a law, and to Israel for an everlasting covenant, 18 Saying, Unto thee will I give the land of Canaan, the lot of your inheritance; 19 When ye were but few, even a few, and strangers in it.”

 See 1st Kings 2:11 where it say David reigned 7 years in Hebron, and then 33 in Jerusalem for a total of 40 years. Hebron is not the perfect picture of the kingdom of Israel as most of Israel followed a type of the anti-christ Saul.

 There will be seven days of heaven and earth being unclean but then God will make a new heaven and a new earth and for the next 33,000 years there will be perfect righteousness.

*Job 15:15 Behold, he putteth not trust in his saints: yea, The heavens are not clean in his sight.*

“20 And when they went from nation to nation, and from one kingdom to another people; 21 He suffered no man to do them wrong: yea, he reproved kings for their sakes, 22 Saying, Touch not mine anointed, and do my prophets no harm. 23 Sing unto the LORD, all the earth; shew forth from day to day his salvation. 24 Declare his glory among the heathen; his marvellous works among all nations. 25 For great is the LORD, and greatly to be praised: he also is to be feared above all gods. 26 For all the gods of the people are idols: but the LORD made the heavens. 27 Glory and honour are in his presence; strength and gladness are in his place. 28 Give unto the LORD, ye kindreds of the people, give unto the LORD glory and strength. 29 Give unto the LORD the glory due unto his name: bring an offering, and come before him: worship the LORD in the beauty of holiness. 30 Fear before him, all the earth: the world also shall be stable, that it be not moved. 31 Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice: and let men say among the nations, The LORD reigneth. 32 Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof: let the fields rejoice, and all that is therein. 33 Then shall the trees of the wood sing out at the presence of the LORD, because he cometh to judge the earth. 34 O give thanks unto the LORD; for he is good; for his mercy endureth for ever. 35 And say ye, Save us, O God of our salvation, and gather us together, and deliver us from the heathen, that we may give thanks to thy holy name, and glory in thy praise. 36 Blessed be the LORD God of Israel for ever and ever.”

And all the people said,

“Amen,”

and praised the LORD. 37 So he left there before the ark of the covenant of the LORD Asaph and his brethren, to minister before the ark continually, as every day's work required: 38 And Obededom with their brethren, threescore and eight; Obededom also the son of Jeduthun and Hosah to be porters: 39 And Zadok the priest, and his brethren the priests, before the tabernacle of the LORD in the high place that was at Gibeon,

Obededom: The ark stayed at his house for ninety days after Uzza died for touching it accidently while it was falling.

Porters: A door keeper.

The high place that was at Gibeon: Many of the pagan religions held their ceremonies on mountain tops. The kings of Israel and Judah often allowed the high places to remain which angered the LORD.

40 To offer burnt offerings unto the LORD upon the altar of the burnt offering continually morning and evening, and to do according to all that is written in the law of the LORD, which he commanded Israel; 41 And with them Heman and Jeduthun, and the rest that were chosen, who were expressed by name, to give thanks to the LORD, because his mercy endureth for ever; 42 And with them Heman and Jeduthun with trumpets and cymbals for those that should make a sound, and with musical instruments of God. And the sons of Jeduthun were porters. 43 And all the people departed every man to his house: and David returned to bless his house.

Morning and evening: See Exodus 29:41.

 David’s house had just been completed by Hiram.

Chapter Seventeen

The ark remaineth under curtains

1 Now it came to pass, as David sat in his house, that David said to Nathan the prophet,

“Lo, I dwell in an house of cedars, but the ark of the covenant of the LORD remaineth under curtains.”

2 Then Nathan said unto David,

“Do all that is in thine heart; for God is with thee.”

3 And it came to pass the same night, that the word of God came to Nathan, saying,

“4 Go and tell David my servant, Thus saith the LORD, Thou shalt not build me an house to dwell in: 5 For I have not dwelt in an house since the day that I brought up Israel unto this day; but have gone from tent to tent, and from one tabernacle to another. 6 Wheresoever I have walked with all Israel, spake I a word to any of the judges of Israel, whom I commanded to feed my people, saying, Why have ye not built me an house of cedars? 7 Now therefore thus shalt thou say unto my servant David, Thus saith the LORD of hosts, I took thee from the sheepcote, even from following the sheep, that thou shouldest be ruler over my people Israel: 8 And I have been with thee whithersoever thou hast walked, and have cut off all thine enemies from before thee, and have made thee a name like the name of the great men that are in the earth. 9 Also I will ordain a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, and they shall dwell in their place, and shall be moved no more; neither shall the children of wickedness waste them any more, as at the beginning, 10 And since the time that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. Moreover I will subdue all thine enemies. Furthermore I tell thee that the LORD will build thee an house. 11 And it shall come to pass, when thy days be expired that thou must go to be with thy fathers, that I will raise up thy seed after thee, which shall be of thy sons; and I will establish his kingdom. 12 He shall build me an house, and I will stablish his throne for ever. 13 I will be his father, and he shall be my son: and I will not take my mercy away from him, as I took it from him that was before thee: 14 But I will settle him in mine house and in my kingdom for ever: and his throne shall be established for evermore.”

15 According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David. 16 And David the king came and sat before the LORD, and said,

“Who am I, O LORD God, and what is mine house, that thou hast brought me hitherto? 17 And yet this was a small thing in thine eyes, O God; for thou hast also spoken of thy servant's house for a great while to come, and hast regarded me according to the estate of a man of high degree, O LORD God. 18 What can David speak more to thee for the honour of thy servant? for thou knowest thy servant. 19 O LORD, for thy servant's sake, and according to thine own heart, hast thou done all this greatness, in making known all these great things. 20 O LORD, there is none like thee, neither is there any God beside thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears. 21 And what one nation in the earth is like thy people Israel, whom God went to redeem to be his own people, to make thee a name of greatness and terribleness, by driving out nations from before thy people, whom thou hast redeemed out of Egypt? 22 For thy people Israel didst thou make thine own people for ever; and thou, LORD, becamest their God. 23 Therefore now, LORD, let the thing that thou hast spoken concerning thy servant and concerning his house be established for ever, and do as thou hast said. 24 Let it even be established, that thy name may be magnified for ever, saying, The LORD of hosts is the God of Israel, even a God to Israel: and let the house of David thy servant be established before thee. 25 For thou, O my God, hast told thy servant that thou wilt build him an house: therefore thy servant hath found in his heart to pray before thee. 26 And now, LORD, thou art God, and hast promised this goodness unto thy servant: 27 Now therefore let it please thee to bless the house of thy servant, that it may be before thee for ever: for thou blessest, O LORD, and it shall be blessed for ever.”

Chapter Eighteen

Stablishing David’s dominion

1 Now after this it came to pass, that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them, and took Gath and her towns out of the hand of the Philistines. 2 And he smote Moab; and the Moabites became David's servants, and brought gifts.

And brought gifts: Yearly taxes that were to help keep Israel stronger than her enemies.

3 And David smote Hadarezer king of Zobah unto Hamath, as he went to stablish his dominion by the river Euphrates. 4 And David took from him a thousand chariots, and seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen: David also houghed all the chariot horses, but reserved of them an hundred chariots. 5 And when the Syrians of Damascus came to help Hadarezer king of Zobah, David slew of the Syrians two and twenty thousand men. 6 Then David put garrisons in Syriadamascus; and the Syrians became David's servants, and brought gifts. Thus the LORD preserved David whithersoever he went.

David also houghed all the chariot horses: He killed them so they could not be used against him in the near future. See Joshua 11:9 and 2nd Samuel 8:4.

The LORD preserved David: God does not do this same thing to individuals today in the dispensation of grace.

 He did things like this continually with Israel and some of her leaders because he has an eternal covenant with them. He will do these things again in the time of Jacob’s trouble.

The shields of Gold

7 And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadarezer, and brought them to Jerusalem.

Very much brass

8 Likewise from Tibhath, and from Chun, cities of Hadarezer, brought David very much brass, wherewith Solomon made the brasen sea, and the pillars, and the vessels of brass.

 All of these three things that David took from Hadarezer would be taken to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar. See 1st Chronicles 18:8, 2nd Chronicles 25:13 and Jeremiah 52:17-20.

9 Now when Tou king of Hamath heard how David had smitten all the host of Hadarezer king of Zobah; 10 He sent Hadoram his son to king David, to enquire of his welfare, and to congratulate him, because he had fought against Hadarezer, and smitten him; (for Hadarezer had war with Tou;) and with him all manner of vessels of gold and silver and brass. 11 Them also king David dedicated unto the LORD, with the silver and the gold that he brought from all these nations; from Edom, and from Moab, and from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek.

The valley of salt

12 Moreover Abishai the son of Zeruiah slew of the Edomites in the valley of salt eighteen thousand. 13 And he put garrisons in Edom; and all the Edomites became David's servants. Thus the LORD preserved David whithersoever he went.

Abishai the son of Zeruiah: David’s sister’s son.

The valley of salt: The valley around the Dead sea.

14 So David reigned over all Israel, and executed judgment and justice among all his people. 15 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, recorder.

Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host: Zeruiah was David’s sisters son, and brother of Abishai. 2nd Samuel 8:16.

Jehoshaphat: He was the recorder. The one who probably wrote 1st and 2nd Chronicles. See 2nd Samuel 20:24. \* Not to be confused with Solomon’s grandson (and future king of Judah).

16 And Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Abimelech the son of Abiathar, were the priests; and Shavsha was scribe; 17 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and the sons of David were chief about the king.

The Cherethites, and the Pelethites: The Cherethites were a remnant of a nation along the sea according to Zephaniah 2:5 and Ezekiel 25:16. See 2nd Samuel 8:18. They served David’s army.

Chapter Nineteen

Hunan’s

1 Now it came to pass after this, that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon died, and his son reigned in his stead. 2 And David said,

“I will shew kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, because his father shewed kindness to me.”

And David sent messengers to comfort him concerning his father. So the servants of David came into the land of the children of Ammon to Hanun, to comfort him. 3 But the princes of the children of Ammon said to Hanun,

“Thinkest thou that David doth honour thy father, that he hath sent comforters unto thee? are not his servants come unto thee for to search, and to overthrow, and to spy out the land?”

4 Wherefore Hanun took David's servants, and shaved them, and cut off their garments in the midst hard by their buttocks, and sent them away. 5 Then there went certain, and told David how the men were served. And he sent to meet them: for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said,

“Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and then return.”

6 And when the children of Ammon saw that they had made themselves odious to David, Hanun and the children of Ammon sent a thousand talents of silver to hire them chariots and horsemen out of Mesopotamia, and out of Syriamaachah, and out of Zobah.

Odious: They stank.

7 So they hired thirty and two thousand chariots, and the king of Maachah and his people; who came and pitched before Medeba. And the children of Ammon gathered themselves together from their cities, and came to battle.

Brothers in battle

8 And when David heard of it, he sent Joab, and all the host of the mighty men. 9 And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array before the gate of the city: and the kings that were come were by themselves in the field. 10 Now when Joab saw that the battle was set against him before and behind, he chose out of all the choice of Israel, and put them in array against the Syrians. 11 And the rest of the people he delivered unto the hand of Abishai his brother, and they set themselves in array against the children of Ammon. 12 And he said,

Abishai his brother: Joab was his brother. They were David’s nephews.

“If the Syrians be too strong for me, then thou shalt help me: but if the children of Ammon be too strong for thee, then I will help thee. 13 Be of good courage, and let us behave ourselves valiantly for our people, and for the cities of our God: and let the LORD do that which is good in his sight.”

14 So Joab and the people that were with him drew nigh before the Syrians unto the battle; and they fled before him. 15 And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, they likewise fled before Abishai his brother, and entered into the city. Then Joab came to Jerusalem. 16 And when the Syrians saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they sent messengers, and drew forth the Syrians that were beyond the river: and Shophach the captain of the host of Hadarezer went before them. 17 And it was told David; and he gathered all Israel, and passed over Jordan, and came upon them, and set the battle in array against them. So when David had put the battle in array against the Syrians, they fought with him. 18 But the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew of the Syrians seven thousand men which fought in chariots, and forty thousand footmen, and killed Shophach the captain of the host. 19 And when the servants of Hadarezer saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they made peace with David, and became his servants: neither would the Syrians help the children of Ammon any more.

Chapter Twenty

But David tarried at Jerusalem

1 And it came to pass, that after the year was expired, at the time that kings go out to battle, Joab led forth the power of the army, and wasted the country of the children of Ammon, and came and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried at Jerusalem. And Joab smote Rabbah, and destroyed it.

But David tarried at Jerusalem: This is where David committed adultery with Bathshebah, the wife of Uriah in 2nd Samuel 18. 1st Chronicles doesn’t record this story because it focuses more on the kingdom and the temple.

2 And David took the crown of their king from off his head, and found it to weigh a talent of gold, and there were precious stones in it; and it was set upon David's head: and he brought also exceeding much spoil out of the city.

 In 1st Samuel we are told that Joab summons the king to come to Rabbah and lead the final battle there so he can claim the city instead of Joab.

3 And he brought out the people that were in it, and cut them with saws, and with harrows of iron, and with axes. Even so dealt David with all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David and all the people returned to Jerusalem.

A talent of gold: A talent is a measurement of weight. It weighed a lot and would only be worn for a short while.

And cut them with saws, and with harrows of iron, and with axes: I take this literally. This severe punishment was apparently only reserved for the children of Ammon.

War at Gezer with the Philistines

4 And it came to pass after this, that there arose war at Gezer with the Philistines; at which time Sibbechai the Hushathite slew Sippai, that was of the children of the giant: and they were subdued. 5 And there was war again with the Philistines; and Elhanan the son of Jair slew Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, whose spear staff was like a weaver's beam. 6 And yet again there was war at Gath, where was a man of great stature, whose fingers and toes were four and twenty, six on each hand, and six on each foot: and he also was the son of the giant. 7 But when he defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea David's brother slew him. 8 These were born unto the giant in Gath; and they fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his servants.

Chapter Twenty-one

Satan stood up

1 And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. 2 And David said to Joab and to the rulers of the people,

“Go, number Israel from Beersheba even to Dan; and bring the number of them to me, that I may know it.”

3 And Joab answered,

“The LORD make his people an hundred times so many more as they be: but, my lord the king, are they not all my lord's servants? why then doth my lord require this thing? why will he be a cause of trespass to Israel?”

 Joab knew it was a sin to number the people because it showed a lack of faith upon the leader that God would win the victory and made it more of a numbers game.

4 Nevertheless the king's word prevailed against Joab. Wherefore Joab departed, and went throughout all Israel, and came to Jerusalem. 5 And Joab gave the sum of the number of the people unto David. And all they of Israel were a thousand thousand and an hundred thousand men that drew sword: and Judah was four hundred threescore and ten thousand men that drew sword. 6 But Levi and Benjamin counted he not among them: for the king's word was abominable to Joab. 7 And God was displeased with this thing; therefore he smote Israel. 8 And David said unto God,

“I have sinned greatly, because I have done this thing: but now, I beseech thee, do away the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.”

9 And the LORD spake unto Gad, David's seer, saying,

“10 Go and tell David, saying, Thus saith the LORD, I offer thee three things: choose thee one of them, that I may do it unto thee.”

11 So Gad came to David, and said unto him,

“Thus saith the LORD, Choose thee 12 Either three years' famine; or three months to be destroyed before thy foes, while that the sword of thine enemies overtaketh thee; or else three days the sword of the LORD, even the pestilence, in the land, and the angel of the LORD destroying throughout all the coasts of Israel. Now therefore advise thyself what word I shall bring again to him that sent me.”

13 And David said unto Gad,

“I am in a great strait: let me fall now into the hand of the LORD; for very great are his mercies: but let me not fall into the hand of man.”

14 So the LORD sent pestilence upon Israel: and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men. 15 And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was destroying, the LORD beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed,

“It is enough, stay now thine hand.”

God sent an angel to Jerusalem to destroy it: It was the angel of the LORD, not just any angel. See the verse below.

The LORD beheld, and he repented him of the evil: To repent means to change one’s mind which brings about a change of action(s). The LORD didn’t repent of his sins, he didn’t have any.

And the angel of the LORD stood by the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. 16 And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of the LORD stand between the earth and the heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem.

The angel of the LORD: This is often a pre-incarnate appearance of Jesus.

Then David and the elders of Israel, who were clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces. 17 And David said unto God,

“Is it not I that commanded the people to be numbered? even I it is that have sinned and done evil indeed; but as for these sheep, what have they done? let thine hand, I pray thee, O LORD my God, be on me, and on my father's house; but not on thy people, that they should be plagued.”

18 Then the angel of the LORD commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and set up an altar unto the LORD in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite. 19 And David went up at the saying of Gad, which he spake in the name of the LORD. 20 And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat. 21 And as David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David, and went out of the threshingfloor, and bowed himself to David with his face to the ground.

The threshingfloor of Arnan: In 2nd Samuel 24:18 he is called Araunah. This is the same place where Abraham almost sacrificed Isaac. It is the site of the future temple.

22 Then David said to Ornan,

“Grant me the place of this threshingfloor, that I may build an altar therein unto the LORD: thou shalt grant it me for the full price: that the plague may be stayed from the people.”

23 And Ornan said unto David,

“Take it to thee, and let my lord the king do that which is good in his eyes: lo, I give thee the oxen also for burnt offerings, and the threshing instruments for wood, and the wheat for the meat offering; I give it all.”

24 And king David said to Ornan,

“Nay; but I will verily buy it for the full price: for I will not take that which is thine for the LORD, nor offer burnt offerings without cost.”

25 So David gave to Ornan for the place six hundred shekels of gold by weight. 26 And David built there an altar unto the LORD, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings, and called upon the LORD; and he answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar of burnt offering. 27 And the LORD commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.

And he answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar: God had done this a few times in the scriptures to show he was pleased with the offering. As in the story of Samson’s parents in Judges 13:19-20.

 If he was not pleased, he would burn up the offeror. See the story of Aaron’s sons in Leviticus 10;1-2. See 2nd Chronicles 24:1-2.

And the LORD commanded the angel: The angel of the LORD.

28 At that time when David saw that the LORD had answered him in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite, then he sacrificed there.

 This was to be the new site of the temple which would be built in Solomon’s day.

29 For the tabernacle of the LORD, which Moses made in the wilderness, and the altar of the burnt offering, were at that season in the high place at Gibeon.

 They would remain there for some time.

30 But David could not go before it to enquire of God: for he was afraid because of the sword of the angel of the LORD.

For he was afraid because of the sword of the angel: David actually got to see the angel and many in Israel saw angels at important times. We do not see them today in the dispensation of grace.

Chapter Twenty-two

This is the house of the LORD God

1 Then David said,

“This is the house of the LORD God, and this is the altar of the burnt offering for Israel.”

2 And David commanded to gather together the strangers that were in the land of Israel; and he set masons to hew wrought stones to build the house of God. 3 And David prepared iron in abundance for the nails for the doors of the gates, and for the joinings; and brass in abundance without weight; 4 Also cedar trees in abundance: for the Zidonians and they of Tyre brought much cedar wood to David. 5 And David said,

“Solomon my son is young and tender, and the house that is to be builded for the LORD must be exceeding magnifical, of fame and of glory throughout all countries: I will therefore now make preparation for it.”

Exceeding magnifical: Magnificent.

So David prepared abundantly before his death. 6 Then he called for Solomon his son, and charged him to build an house for the LORD God of Israel. 7 And David said to Solomon,

“My son, as for me, it was in my mind to build an house unto the name of the LORD my God: 8 But the word of the LORD came to me, saying,”

“Thou hast shed blood abundantly, and hast made great wars: thou shalt not build an house unto my name, because thou hast shed much blood upon the earth in my sight. 9 Behold, a son shall be born to thee, who shall be a man of rest; and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about: for his name shall be Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness unto Israel in his days. 10 He shall build an house for my name; and he shall be my son, and I will be his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever.”

“11 Now, my son, the LORD be with thee; and prosper thou, and build the house of the LORD thy God, as he hath said of thee. 12 Only the LORD give thee wisdom and understanding, and give thee charge concerning Israel, that thou mayest keep the law of the LORD thy God. 13 Then shalt thou prosper, if thou takest heed to fulfil the statutes and judgments which the LORD charged Moses with concerning Israel: be strong, and of good courage; dread not, nor be dismayed. 14 Now, behold, in my trouble I have prepared for the house of the LORD an hundred thousand talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver; and of brass and iron without weight; for it is in abundance: timber also and stone have I prepared; and thou mayest add thereto. 15 Moreover there are workmen with thee in abundance, hewers and workers of stone and timber, and all manner of cunning men for every manner of work. 16 Of the gold, the silver, and the brass, and the iron, there is no number. Arise therefore, and be doing, and the LORD be with thee.”

17 David also commanded all the princes of Israel to help Solomon his son, saying,

“18 Is not the LORD your God with you? and hath he not given you rest on every side? for he hath given the inhabitants of the land into mine hand; and the land is subdued before the LORD, and before his people. 19 Now set your heart and your soul to seek the LORD your God; arise therefore, and build ye the sanctuary of the LORD God, to bring the ark of the covenant of the LORD, and the holy vessels of God, into the house that is to be built to the name of the LORD.”

Chapter Twenty-three

Solomon becomes king

1 So when David was old and full of days, he made Solomon his son king over Israel. 2 And he gathered together all the princes of Israel, with the priests and the Levites. 3 Now the Levites were numbered from the age of thirty years and upward: and their number by their polls, man by man, was thirty and eight thousand.

 No priest could be under thirty years of age. Jesus began his ministry at his thirtieth birthday and was washed and anointed at his baptism, similar to what a priest would do. Jesus was Israel’s High Priest. See Exodus 19:5-6 and Numbers 4:3.

4 Of which, twenty and four thousand were to set forward the work of the house of the LORD; and six thousand were officers and judges:

“5 Moreover four thousand were porters; and four thousand praised the LORD with the instruments which I made,”

said David, to praise therewith. 6 And David divided them into courses among the sons of Levi, namely, Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. 7 Of the Gershonites were, Laadan, and Shimei. 8 The sons of Laadan; the chief was Jehiel, and Zetham, and Joel, three. 9 The sons of Shimei; Shelomith, and Haziel, and Haran, three. These were the chief of the fathers of Laadan. 10 And the sons of Shimei were, Jahath, Zina, and Jeush, and Beriah. These four were the sons of Shimei. 11 And Jahath was the chief, and Zizah the second: but Jeush and Beriah had not many sons; therefore they were in one reckoning, according to their father's house. 12 The sons of Kohath; Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel, four. 13 The sons of Amram; Aaron and Moses: and Aaron was separated, that he should sanctify the most holy things, he and his sons for ever, to burn incense before the LORD, to minister unto him, and to bless in his name for ever. 14 Now concerning Moses the man of God, his sons were named of the tribe of Levi. 15 The sons of Moses were, Gershom, and Eliezer. 16 Of the sons of Gershom, Shebuel was the chief. 17 And the sons of Eliezer were, Rehabiah the chief. And Eliezer had none other sons; but the sons of Rehabiah were very many. 18 Of the sons of Izhar; Shelomith the chief. 19 Of the sons of Hebron; Jeriah the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth. 20 Of the sons of Uzziel; Michah the first, and Jesiah the second. 21 The sons of Merari; Mahli, and Mushi. The sons of Mahli; Eleazar, and Kish. 22 And Eleazar died, and had no sons, but daughters: and their brethren the sons of Kish took them. 23 The sons of Mushi; Mahli, and Eder, and Jeremoth, three. 24 These were the sons of Levi after the house of their fathers; even the chief of the fathers, as they were counted by number of names by their polls, that did the work for the service of the house of the LORD, from the age of twenty years and upward. 25 For David said,

“The LORD God of Israel hath given rest unto his people, that they may dwell in Jerusalem for ever: 26 And also unto the Levites; they shall no more carry the tabernacle, nor any vessels of it for the service thereof.”

27 For by the last words of David the Levites were numbered from twenty years old and above: 28 Because their office was to wait on the sons of Aaron for the service of the house of the LORD, in the courts, and in the chambers, and in the purifying of all holy things, and the work of the service of the house of God; 29 Both for the shewbread, and for the fine flour for meat offering, and for the unleavened cakes, and for that which is baked in the pan, and for that which is fried, and for all manner of measure and size; 30 And to stand every morning to thank and praise the LORD, and likewise at even;

 Every morning and every evening forever this offering was to continue as long as there was an altar and priests.

 Israel has not had a temple with an altar, nor any priests to offer sacrifices on and they will not until the church is raptured off this earth and the time of Jacob’s trouble begins.

31 And to offer all burnt sacrifices unto the LORD in the sabbaths, in the new moons, and on the set feasts, by number, according to the order commanded unto them, continually before the LORD: 32 And that they should keep the charge of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the charge of the holy place, and the charge of the sons of Aaron their brethren, in the service of the house of the LORD.

 All of these commandments are found in the book of Leviticus, which is an instruction manual for the Levites.

Chapter Twenty-four

The divisions of the sons of Aaron

1 Now these are the divisions of the sons of Aaron. The sons of Aaron; Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. 2 But Nadab and Abihu died before their father, and had no children: therefore Eleazar and Ithamar executed the priest's office.

Nadab and Abihu: They died because they offered strange fire on the altar and God killed them for it.

3 And David distributed them, both Zadok of the sons of Eleazar, and Ahimelech of the sons of Ithamar, according to their offices in their service. 4 And there were more chief men found of the sons of Eleazar than of the sons of Ithamar; and thus were they divided. Among the sons of Eleazar there were sixteen chief men of the house of their fathers, and eight among the sons of Ithamar according to the house of their fathers.

Eleazar: (Zadok) Sixteen chief men.

Ithamar: (Ahimelech) Eight chief men.

5 Thus were they divided by lot, one sort with another; for the governors of the sanctuary, and governors of the house of God, were of the sons of Eleazar, and of the sons of Ithamar.

Thus were they divided by lot: They cast lots. See verse 31 below.

Shemaiah the scribe

6 And Shemaiah the son of Nethaneel the scribe, one of the Levites, wrote them before the king, and the princes, and Zadok the priest, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, and before the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites: one principal household being taken for Eleazar, and one taken for Ithamar.

The twenty-four courses of priests

The chief men of Eleazar

7 Now the first lot came forth to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, 8 The third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, 9 The fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to Mijamin, 10 The seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah,

The eighth to Abijah: This is the course of priests that John the Baptist came from and his father Zachariah. It is called the course of Abia in Luke 1:5.

11 The ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah, 12 The eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim, 13 The thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab, 14 The fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer,

The chief men of Ithamar

15 The seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Aphses, 16 The nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezekel, 17 The one and twentieth to Jachin, the two and twentieth to Gamul, 18 The three and twentieth to Delaiah, the four and twentieth to Maaziah.

 These eight belonged to Ithamar.

19 These were the orderings of them in their service to come into the house of the LORD, according to their manner, under Aaron their father, as the LORD God of Israel had commanded him.

The rest of the sons of Levi

20 And the rest of the sons of Levi were these: Of the sons of Amram; Shubael: of the sons of Shubael; Jehdeiah. 21 Concerning Rehabiah: of the sons of Rehabiah, the first was Isshiah. 22 Of the Izharites; Shelomoth: of the sons of Shelomoth; Jahath. 23 And the sons of Hebron; Jeriah the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, Jekameam the fourth. 24 Of the sons of Uzziel; Michah: of the sons of Michah; Shamir. 25 The brother of Michah was Isshiah: of the sons of Isshiah; Zechariah.

The sons of Merari

26 The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi: the sons of Jaaziah; Beno. 27 The sons of Merari by Jaaziah; Beno, and Shoham, and Zaccur, and Ibri. 28 Of Mahli came Eleazar, who had no sons. 29 Concerning Kish: the son of Kish was Jerahmeel. 30 The sons also of Mushi; Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the sons of the Levites after the house of their fathers.

These likewise cast lots

31 These likewise cast lots over against their brethren the sons of Aaron in the presence of David the king, and Zadok, and Ahimelech, and the chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites, even the principal fathers over against their younger brethren.

These likewise cast lots: Like when the tribes received their land allotments these priests received their duties.

Zadok, and Ahimelech: The chief of the fathers of the priests and Levites.

Chapter Twenty-five

The sons of Asaph

1 Moreover David and the captains of the host separated to the service of the sons of Asaph, and of Heman, and of Jeduthun, who should prophesy with harps, with psalteries, and with cymbals: and the number of the workmen according to their service was:

Who should prophesy with harps: Prophecies were given by prophecies while they were playing.

2 Of the sons of Asaph; Zaccur, and Joseph, and Nethaniah, and Asarelah, the sons of Asaph under the hands of Asaph, which prophesied according to the order of the king.

 The king didn’t order them to prophesy, they were a part of an order established by the king to sing and play prophetic music of praise unto God.

The sons of Asaph: Asaph was the person who wrote many Psalms and put many of them to music.

3 Of Jeduthun: the sons of Jeduthun; Gedaliah, and Zeri, and Jeshaiah, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, six, under the hands of their father Jeduthun, who prophesied with a harp, to give thanks and to praise the LORD.

 Many of the Psalms were prophetic in nature and were set to music by these sons of Asaph. These sons played harps.

4 Of Heman: the sons of Heman; Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shebuel, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, and Romamtiezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth: 5 All these were the sons of Heman the king's seer in the words of God, to lift up the horn. And God gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.

The sons of Heman: These fourteen were players of horns.

The kings seer in the words of God: Many of the Psalms were prophetic in nature.

6 All these were under the hands of their father for song in the house of the LORD, with cymbals, psalteries, and harps, for the service of the house of God, according to the king's order to Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman. 7 So the number of them, with their brethren that were instructed in the songs of the LORD, even all that were cunning, was two hundred fourscore and eight.

Two hundred fourscore and eight: 144 x 2 = 288.

Twenty-four lots of twelve each

8 And they cast lots, ward against ward, as well the small as the great, the teacher as the scholar.

Ward against ward: Wards are places of security. Where things of value are secured such as offerings and instruments.

9 Now the first lot came forth for Asaph to Joseph: the second to Gedaliah, who with his brethren and sons were twelve:

 Of all the twenty-four lots twenty-two individually mention their brethren and sons were twelve, but in the first two it has different wording, both of them are twelve as they have to total 288, and they do.

10 The third to Zaccur, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 11 The fourth to Izri, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 12 The fifth to Nethaniah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 13 The sixth to Bukkiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 14 The seventh to Jesharelah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 15 The eighth to Jeshaiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 16 The ninth to Mattaniah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve:

17 The tenth to Shimei, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 18 The eleventh to Azareel, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 19 The twelfth to Hashabiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 20 The thirteenth to Shubael, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 21 The fourteenth to Mattithiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 22 The fifteenth to Jeremoth, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 23 The sixteenth to Hananiah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 24 The seventeenth to Joshbekashah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 25 The eighteenth to Hanani, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 26 The nineteenth to Mallothi, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 27 The twentieth to Eliathah, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 28 The one and twentieth to Hothir, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 29 The two and twentieth to Giddalti, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 30 The three and twentieth to Mahazioth, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: 31 The four and twentieth to Romamtiezer, he, his sons, and his brethren, were twelve.

He his sons, and his brethren, were twelve: Twelve is the number of Israel. The body of Christ has no relationship to the number twelve on purpose so as not to confuse people.

Chapter Twenty-six

The division of the porters

1 Concerning the divisions of the porters: Of the Korhites was Meshelemiah the son of Kore, of the sons of Asaph. 2 And the sons of Meshelemiah were, Zechariah the firstborn, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth, 3 Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Elioenai the seventh. 4 Moreover the sons of Obededom were, Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sacar the fourth, and Nethaneel the fifth, 5 Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peulthai the eighth: for God blessed him. 6 Also unto Shemaiah his son were sons born, that ruled throughout the house of their father: for they were mighty men of valour. 7 The sons of Shemaiah; Othni, and Rephael, and Obed, Elzabad, whose brethren were strong men, Elihu, and Semachiah. 8 All these of the sons of Obededom: they and their sons and their brethren, able men for strength for the service, were threescore and two of Obededom. 9 And Meshelemiah had sons and brethren, strong men, eighteen. 10 Also Hosah, of the children of Merari, had sons; Simri the chief, (for though he was not the firstborn, yet his father made him the chief;) 11 Hilkiah the second, Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth: all the sons and brethren of Hosah were thirteen.

The porters

12 Among these were the divisions of the porters, even among the chief men, having wards one against another, to minister in the house of the LORD. 13 And they cast lots, as well the small as the great, according to the house of their fathers, for every gate.

The lots

14 And the lot eastward fell to Shelemiah. Then for Zechariah his son, a wise counsellor, they cast lots; and his lot came out northward. 15 To Obededom southward; and to his sons the house of Asuppim. 16 To Shuppim and Hosah the lot came forth westward, with the gate Shallecheth, by the causeway of the going up, ward against ward. 17 Eastward were six Levites, northward four a day, southward four a day, and toward Asuppim two and two. 18 At Parbar westward, four at the causeway, and two at Parbar. 19 These are the divisions of the porters among the sons of Kore, and among the sons of Merari.

The dedicated things

20 And of the Levites, Ahijah was over the treasures of the house of God, and over the treasures of the dedicated things. 21 As concerning the sons of Laadan; the sons of the Gershonite Laadan, chief fathers, even of Laadan the Gershonite, were Jehieli. 22 The sons of Jehieli; Zetham, and Joel his brother, which were over the treasures of the house of the LORD. 23 Of the Amramites, and the Izharites, the Hebronites, and the Uzzielites: 24 And Shebuel the son of Gershom, the son of Moses, was ruler of the treasures. 25 And his brethren by Eliezer; Rehabiah his son, and Jeshaiah his son, and Joram his son, and Zichri his son, and Shelomith his son. 26 Which Shelomith and his brethren were over all the treasures of the dedicated things, which David the king, and the chief fathers, the captains over thousands and hundreds, and the captains of the host, had dedicated. 27 Out of the spoils won in battles did they dedicate to maintain the house of the LORD. 28 And all that Samuel the seer, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruiah, had dedicated; and whosoever had dedicated any thing, it was under the hand of Shelomith, and of his brethren.

The Izharites

29 Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons were for the outward business over Israel, for officers and judges. 30 And of the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his brethren, men of valour, a thousand and seven hundred, were officers among them of Israel on this side Jordan westward in all the business of the LORD, and in the service of the king. 31 Among the Hebronites was Jerijah the chief, even among the Hebronites, according to the generations of his fathers. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they were sought for, and there were found among them mighty men of valour at Jazer of Gilead. 32 And his brethren, men of valour, were two thousand and seven hundred chief fathers, whom king David made rulers over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter pertaining to God, and affairs of the king.

Chapter Twenty-seven

Captains of the host

1 Now the children of Israel after their number, to wit, the chief fathers and captains of thousands and hundreds, and their officers that served the king in any matter of the courses, which came in and went out month by month throughout all the months of the year, of every course were twenty and four thousand.

To wit: More specifically, or to be precise.

The courses

The first month

2 Over the first course for the first month was Jashobeam the son of Zabdiel: and in his course were twenty and four thousand. 3 Of the children of Perez was the chief of all the captains of the host for the first month.

The second month

4 And over the course of the second month was Dodai an Ahohite, and of his course was Mikloth also the ruler: in his course likewise were twenty and four thousand.

The third month

5 The third captain of the host for the third month was Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, a chief priest: and in his course were twenty and four thousand. 6 This is that Benaiah, who was mighty among the thirty, and above the thirty: and in his course was Ammizabad his son.

The fourth month

7 The fourth captain for the fourth month was Asahel the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah his son after him: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The fifth month

8 The fifth captain for the fifth month was Shamhuth the Izrahite: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The sixth month

9 The sixth captain for the sixth month was Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The seventh month

10 The seventh captain for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The eighth month

11 The eighth captain for the eighth month was Sibbecai the Hushathite, of the Zarhites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The ninth month

12 The ninth captain for the ninth month was Abiezer the Anetothite, of the Benjamites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The tenth month

13 The tenth captain for the tenth month was Maharai the Netophathite, of the Zarhites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The eleventh month

14 The eleventh captain for the eleventh month was Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The twelfth month

15 The twelfth captain for the twelfth month was Heldai the Netophathite, of Othniel: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.

The rulers of the tribes

The Reubenites and Simeonites

16 Furthermore over the tribes of Israel: the ruler of the Reubenites was Eliezer the son of Zichri: of the Simeonites, Shephatiah the son of Maachah:

The Levites and Aaronites

17 Of the Levites, Hashabiah the son of Kemuel: of the Aaronites, Zadok:

Judah and Issachar

18 Of Judah, Elihu, one of the brethren of David: of Issachar, Omri the son of Michael:

Zebulun and Naphtali

19 Of Zebulun, Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah: of Naphtali, Jerimoth the son of Azriel:

The children of Ephraim and the half tribe of Manasseh

20 Of the children of Ephraim, Hoshea the son of Azaziah: of the half tribe of Manasseh, Joel the son of Pedaiah:

The half tribe of Manasseh and Benjamin

21 Of the half tribe of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo the son of Zechariah: of Benjamin, Jaasiel the son of Abner:

Dan

22 Of Dan, Azareel the son of Jeroham. These were the princes of the tribes of Israel.

David’s numbering

23 But David took not the number of them from twenty years old and under: because the LORD had said he would increase Israel like to the stars of the heavens. 24 Joab the son of Zeruiah began to number, but he finished not, because there fell wrath for it against Israel; neither was the number put in the account of the chronicles of king David.

Those David put over things

25 And over the king's treasures was Azmaveth the son of Adiel: and over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the castles, was Jehonathan the son of Uzziah: 26 And over them that did the work of the field for tillage of the ground was Ezri the son of Chelub: 27 And over the vineyards was Shimei the Ramathite: over the increase of the vineyards for the wine cellars was Zabdi the Shiphmite: 28 And over the olive trees and the sycomore trees that were in the low plains was Baalhanan the Gederite: and over the cellars of oil was Joash: 29 And over the herds that fed in Sharon was Shitrai the Sharonite: and over the herds that were in the valleys was Shaphat the son of Adlai: 30 Over the camels also was Obil the Ishmaelite: and over the asses was Jehdeiah the Meronothite: 31 And over the flocks was Jaziz the Hagerite. All these were the rulers of the substance which was king David's. 32 Also Jonathan David's uncle was a counsellor, a wise man, and a scribe: and Jehiel the son of Hachmoni was with the king's sons: 33 And Ahithophel was the king's counsellor: and Hushai the Archite was the king's companion: 34 And after Ahithophel was Jehoiada the son of Benaiah, and Abiathar: and the general of the king's army was Joab.

Chapter Twenty-eight

The house of the LORD

1 And David assembled all the princes of Israel, the princes of the tribes, and the captains of the companies that ministered to the king by course, and the captains over the thousands, and captains over the hundreds, and the stewards over all the substance and possession of the king, and of his sons, with the officers, and with the mighty men, and with all the valiant men, unto Jerusalem. 2 Then David the king stood up upon his feet, and said,

“Hear me, my brethren, and my people: As for me, I had in mine heart to build an house of rest for the ark of the covenant of the LORD, and for the footstool of our God, and had made ready for the building: 3 But God said unto me, Thou shalt not build an house for my name, because thou hast been a man of war, and hast shed blood. 4 Howbeit the LORD God of Israel chose me before all the house of my father to be king over Israel for ever: for he hath chosen Judah to be the ruler; and of the house of Judah, the house of my father; and among the sons of my father he liked me to make me king over all Israel: 5 And of all my sons, (for the LORD hath given me many sons,) he hath chosen Solomon my son to sit upon the throne of the kingdom of the LORD over Israel. 6 And he said unto me,”

“Solomon thy son, he shall build my house and my courts: for I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father. 7 Moreover I will establish his kingdom for ever, if he be constant to do my commandments and my judgments, as at this day. 8 Now therefore in the sight of all Israel the congregation of the LORD, and in the audience of our God, keep and seek for all the commandments of the LORD your God: that ye may possess this good land, and leave it for an inheritance for your children after you for ever. 9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the LORD searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever. 10 Take heed now; for the LORD hath chosen thee to build an house for the sanctuary: be strong, and do it.”

The pattern

11 Then David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the porch, and of the houses thereof, and of the treasuries thereof, and of the upper chambers thereof, and of the inner parlours thereof, and of the place of the mercy seat, 12 And the pattern of all that he had by the spirit, of the courts of the house of the LORD, and of all the chambers round about, of the treasuries of the house of God, and of the treasuries of the dedicated things: 13 Also for the courses of the priests and the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the house of the LORD, and for all the vessels of service in the house of the LORD.

Thepattern

*Hebrews 8:5 Who serve unto the example and shadow of heavenly things, as Moses was admonished of God when he was about to make the tabernacle: for, See, saith he, that thou make all things according to the pattern shewed to thee in the mount.*

The gold and the silver

14 He gave of gold by weight for things of gold, for all instruments of all manner of service; silver also for all instruments of silver by weight, for all instruments of every kind of service: 15 Even the weight for the candlesticks of gold, and for their lamps of gold, by weight for every candlestick, and for the lamps thereof: and for the candlesticks of silver by weight, both for the candlestick, and also for the lamps thereof, according to the use of every candlestick. 16 And by weight he gave gold for the tables of shewbread, for every table; and likewise silver for the tables of silver: 17 Also pure gold for the fleshhooks, and the bowls, and the cups: and for the golden basons he gave gold by weight for every bason; and likewise silver by weight for every bason of silver: 18 And for the altar of incense refined gold by weight; and gold for the pattern of the chariot of the cherubims, that spread out their wings, and covered the ark of the covenant of the LORD.

 Much of this gold, and silver David acquired in battle against his enemies.

“19 All this, said David, the LORD made me understand in writing by his hand upon me, even all the works of this pattern.”

 The LORD guided David in writing these patterns for the building of the house of the LORD and for all the instruments to be used in it. It was a pattern of the true tabernacle in heaven not made with hands.

20 And David said to Solomon his son,

“Be strong and of good courage, and do it: fear not, nor be dismayed: for the LORD God, even my God, will be with thee; he will not fail thee, nor forsake thee, until thou hast finished all the work for the service of the house of the LORD. 21 And, behold, the courses of the priests and the Levites, even they shall be with thee for all the service of the house of God: and there shall be with thee for all manner of workmanship every willing skilful man, for any manner of service: also the princes and all the people will be wholly at thy commandment.”

Chapter Twenty-nine

David speaks to Israel

1 Furthermore David the king said unto all the congregation,

“Solomon my son, whom alone God hath chosen, is yet young and tender, and the work is great: for the palace is not for man, but for the LORD God. 2 Now I have prepared with all my might for the house of my God the gold for things to be made of gold, and the silver for things of silver, and the brass for things of brass, the iron for things of iron, and wood for things of wood; onyx stones, and stones to be set, glistering stones, and of divers colours, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance. 3 Moreover, because I have set my affection to the house of my God, I have of mine own proper good, of gold and silver, which I have given to the house of my God, over and above all that I have prepared for the holy house, 4 Even three thousand talents of gold, of the gold of Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the houses withal: 5 The gold for things of gold, and the silver for things of silver, and for all manner of work to be made by the hands of artificers. And who then is willing to consecrate his service this day unto the LORD?”

The gold of Ophir: It was a place settled by Ophir the son of Joktan. See 1st Chronicles 1:23.

6 Then the chief of the fathers and princes of the tribes of Israel, and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers of the king's work, offered willingly, 7 And gave for the service of the house of God of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand drams, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and one hundred thousand talents of iron. 8 And they with whom precious stones were found gave them to the treasure of the house of the LORD, by the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite. 9 Then the people rejoiced, for that they offered willingly, because with perfect heart they offered willingly to the LORD: and David the king also rejoiced with great joy. 10 Wherefore David blessed the LORD before all the congregation: and David said,

“Blessed be thou, LORD God of Israel our father, for ever and ever. 11 Thine, O LORD, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is thine; thine is the kingdom, O LORD, and thou art exalted as head above all. 12 Both riches and honour come of thee, and thou reignest over all; and in thine hand is power and might; and in thine hand it is to make great, and to give strength unto all. 13 Now therefore, our God, we thank thee, and praise thy glorious name. 14 But who am I, and what is my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly after this sort? for all things come of thee, and of thine own have we given thee. 15 For we are strangers before thee, and sojourners, as were all our fathers: our days on the earth are as a shadow, and there is none abiding. 16 O LORD our God, all this store that we have prepared to build thee an house for thine holy name cometh of thine hand, and is all thine own. 17 I know also, my God, that thou triest the heart, and hast pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of mine heart I have willingly offered all these things: and now have I seen with joy thy people, which are present here, to offer willingly unto thee. 18 O LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, our fathers, keep this for ever in the imagination of the thoughts of the heart of thy people, and prepare their heart unto thee: 19 And give unto Solomon my son a perfect heart, to keep thy commandments, thy testimonies, and thy statutes, and to do all these things, and to build the palace, for the which I have made provision.”

20 And David said to all the congregation,

“Now bless the LORD your God.”

 And all the congregation blessed the LORD God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshipped the LORD, and the king. 21 And they sacrificed sacrifices unto the LORD, and offered burnt offerings unto the LORD, on the morrow after that day, even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel:

Solomon is made king the second time

22 And did eat and drink before the LORD on that day with great gladness. And they made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed him unto the LORD to be the chief governor, and Zadok to be priest.

 The first time is right after Adonijah declared himself king and was soon killed by Solomon for trying to marry David’s handmaid Abishag. 1st Chronicles adds a lot of information left out in 1st Kings.

23 Then Solomon sat on the throne of the LORD as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him. 24 And all the princes, and the mighty men, and all the sons likewise of king David, submitted themselves unto Solomon the king. 25 And the LORD magnified Solomon exceedingly in the sight of all Israel, and bestowed upon him such royal majesty as had not been on any king before him in Israel.

The LORD magnified Solomon the king: Solomon was a type of the Messiah and his reign a type of Israel’s future 1,000-year millennial kingdom of peace.

David’s reign

26 Thus David the son of Jesse reigned over all Israel. 27 And the time that he reigned over Israel was forty years; seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem.

Hebron: David reigned for seven years.

Jerusalem: David reigned for thirty-three years.

 When you add these two together you have David reigning for forty years. The number seven is symbolic of the seven days of the week and how it pictures the seven days of a thousand years each of human history so far.

 The thirty-three-year reign pictures the thirty-three thousand years that will follow in the new heaven and the new earth called the dispensation of the fulness of times (Ephesians 1:10).

28 And he died in a good old age, full of days, riches, and honour: and Solomon his son reigned in his stead. 29 Now the acts of David the king, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of Samuel the seer, and in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the book of Gad the seer, 30 With all his reign and his might, and the times that went over him, and over Israel, and over all the kingdoms of the countries.

The book of Samuel the seer: 1st and 2nd Samuel were actually one book in the Jewish bible. They were divided into two because of their size.

The book of Nathan the prophet: The writings of Nathan the prophet.

The book of Gad the seer: The writings of Gad the seer. See 2nd Chronicles 29:25.

The End

1st Chronicles Tests

Chapter 1

 1. List the genealogy from Adam through the sons of Noah.

 2. What was the name of Abraham's concubine?

 3.  In what land did a king reign before a king reigned in Israel?

Chapter 2

 1. What were the names of the sons of Israel?

 2. What was the name of the seventh son in line of the sons of Jesse?

Chapter 3

 1. List the names of David's sons born in Hebron.

 2. In the Davidic line of kings, who was Solomon's son?

Chapter 4

1. Who was more honorable than his brethren?

1. What was Jabez's request of God?

1. How were the Amalekites conquered?

Chapter 5

 1. Who was Reuben's birthright given to and why?

 2. Who's descendants dwelt in the land of Bashan unto Salchah?

 3. Who made war with the Hagarites?

 4. Who was the author of this war?

 5. Who transgressed against the God of their fathers and went a-whoring after the gods of the people of the land whom God destroyed before them?

 6. Who were those that God stirred up their spirit?

 7. Which tribes were carried away to Halah, Habor Hara, and to the river of Gozan?

Chapter 6

 1. Name two very important people of the tribe of Levi's descendants:

 2. Which person of the priestly line went into captivity when the Lord carried away Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar?

 3. List the sons of Levi.

 4. How did those that David set over the service of song in the house of the Lord, minister and where?

 5. What were Aaron and his sons' duties?

 6. List 5 cities that were given to the Levites.

 7. What were these cities called?

Chapter 7

 1. What were the sons of Tola, one of Issachar's descendants?

 2. What were the descendants of Benjamin?

 3. List the names of Naphtali's sons:

 4. List the names of Manasseh's sons.

 5. In which towns did the children of Joseph dwell?

 6. What were the children of Asher?

Chapter 8

 1. List Benjamin's sons.

 2. What were the sons of Ulam?

Chapter 9

 1. How was all Israel reckoned?

 2. Who were the first inhabitants that dwelt in their possessions in their cities?

1. Which tribes dwelt in Jerusalem?

 4. Who were over the work of the service, keepers of the gates of the tabernacle and their fathers being over the host of the Lord and were keepers of the entry?

 5. Who was ruler over them in time past?

 6. Who was the porter of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation?

 7. What were the chief porters of the Levites over?

 8. List the duties of the Levites.

Chapter 10

 1. What were the names of Saul's sons that were slain in mount Gilboa?

 2. How did king Saul die?

 3. How did the Philistines show disrespect to Saul?

 4. What was the reason for Saul's death?

 5. What happened to Saul's kingdom?

Chapter 11

1. Where was David anointed king over Israel?

 2. What was the castle of Zion also called?

 3. What was the name of the well that David longed to drink from but refused when it was offered to him?

 4. Why did David refuse to drink the water?

Chapter 12

 1. Where did David keep himself close because of Saul? Ziklag

 2. Describe the Gadites that separated themselves unto David into the hold to the wilderness.

 3. Who was the leader of the Aaronites?

 4. List the bands that were ready armed to the war and came to David in Hebron to turn the kingdom of Saul to David according to the word of the Lord.

Chapter 13

 1. What was the item that David wanted to transport?

 2. What was this item transported on?

 3. What happened at the threshingfloor of Chidon?

 4. Who was the ark left with?

 5. How long was it in the house?

Chapter 14

 1. Who sent messengers, timber of cedars, masons, and carpenters to David to build him a house?

 2. Who did David inquire from as to whether he should go against the Philistines?

 3. The second time David inquired, what was he told to do and why?

Chapter 15

 1. Who had the Lord chosen to carry the ark of God?

 2. What did the priests and the Levites need to do before bringing the ark of God?

 3. How was the ark transported?

 4. What were the different instruments of musick?

 5. Who was Michal?

 6. Why did she despise David?

Chapter 16

1. After David made an end of the offerings and the blessings, what did he give to all the people?

2. What did David deliver to thank the Lord?

3. Where was the tabernacle of the Lord?

Chapter 17

 1. What was it that David wanted to do for the Lord?

 2. What did God tell Nathan the prophet to tell David?

 3. Who was to build the Lord an house to dwell in?

Chapter 18

 1. Who were the two people groups that David smote?

 2. In what city did David put garrisons?

 3. Of the brass David brought back, what was it used for?

1. What did David dedicate to the Lord?

Chapter 19

 1. Why did Hanun take David's servants and disrespect them by shaving off their beards and cutting their garments by the buttocks?

1. What was the real reason David had come?

 3. Who did the children of Ammon hire chariots and horsemen from when they realized the mistake they had made in mocking David's servants?

 4. Who did David choose to lead the battle?

 5. Who helped Joab?

 6. Who fled before David?

 7. What was the end result of this battle?

Chapter 20

 1. Who wasted the country of the children of Ammon and Rabbah?

 2. Where did David tarry?

 3. What was the name and physical trait of the giants of the Philistines that were killed?

Chapter 21

 1. Who stood up against Israel and provoked David to number Israel?

 2. Who questioned David and his reasoning for the numbering?

 3. Who was not counted among them and why?

 4. Who was displeased with the numbering and what was the result?

5. What were the three choices God gave to David through Gad, his seer?

 6. What was David's choice?

 7. When God stayed the hand of the angel of the Lord over Jerusalem, where did the angel stand down?

 8. What is a threshingfloor symbolic of?

 9. What was the vision David saw?

10. What was David's cry to God?

11. What did the angel of the Lord command Gad to say to David?

12. Who else saw the angel?

13. What was Ornan willing to give to David?

14. What transpired after the offerings were given?

Chapter 22

1. What did David prepare for prior to his death?

2. Why was David not allowed by God to build a house for Him?

 3. What did God tell David that He would be, and do for Solomon?

 4. What did David want the Lord to give Solomon?

 5. What were the items David prepared for the house of God?

 6. What did David tell Solomon to set his heart and soul to seek?

 7. What did David admonish Solomon to do?

Chapter 23

 1. At what age were the Levites numbered?

 2. What were the duties of the Levites in the temple?

 3. What was Aaron, and his sons separated to forever?

 4. What was the age of the sons of Levi wherein they did work for the service of the house of the Lord?

 5. What was the office of the sons of Levi?

Chapter 24

 1. How were the assignments for priests and Levites determined?

Chapter 25

 1. Who did David, and the captains of the host separate to the service of the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun?

 2. How many were instructed in the songs of the Lord?

Chapter 26 Test

 1. How was the division of the porters determined?

 2. Of the Levites, who was over the treasures of the house of God and over the treasures of the dedicated things?

 3. What was dedicated to maintaining the house of the Lord?

Chapter 27

1. What was the number of the chief fathers, captains of thousands and hundreds and their officers that served the king in any matter of the courses month by month throughout the year?

 2. Why didn't David take the number of them from twenty years old and under?

 3. When Joab numbered Israel for David, did he finish the numbering, why or why not, and was the number recorded?

 4. Who was over the king's treasures?

 5. Who was Jonathan?

Chapter 28

 1. What did David advise all of Israel in his speech?

 2. What advice did David give to Solomon, his son?

 3. What did David give to Solomon after his speech?

 4. Where did David get these patterns?

 5. What other things did David give for the temple?

Chapter 29

 1. List the things David told the congregation that he had prepared for the house of God.

 2. What did the chief of the fathers and princes of the tribes of Israel and the captains of thousands and of hundreds with the rulers of the king's work offer willingly?

 3. What did David ask God to give to Solomon?

 4. Who did the people anoint to be chief governor and priest?

 5.  How many years total was the reign of David?

2nd Chronicles

Chapter One

1 And Solomon the son of David was strengthened in his kingdom, and the LORD his God *was* with him, and magnified him exceedingly.

And: 2nd Chronicles is the second half of the book of Chronicles. Notice it begins with the word “and” linking it to 1st Chronicles.

LORD: Is from the four consonants in Hebrew alphabet, YHVH. Possibly pronounced as Yahweh in Hebrew. There is no letter J in Hebrew. Joshua is really pronounced Yoshua.

 Jews did not pronounce the name because it doesn’t have vowels in it and they didn’t want to blaspheme the name of God by pronouncing it incorrectly, so they translated his name as LORD. There are many Lords, but there is only one LORD.

 The LORD God gave Solomon more wisdom than any other man before or after him ever had.

2 Then Solomon spake unto all Israel, to the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every governor in all Israel, the chief of the fathers. 3 So Solomon, and all the congregation with him, went to the high place that *was* at Gibeon; for there was the tabernacle of the congregation of God, which Moses the servant of the LORD had made in the wilderness.

The high place that was at Gibeon: Just north of Jerusalem.

The tabernacle of the congregation of God: The tent that housed the ark of the covenant in the wilderness.

4 But the ark of God had David brought up from Kirjathjearim to *the place which* David had prepared for it: for he had pitched a tent for it at Jerusalem. 5 Moreover the brasen altar, that Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, had made, he put before the tabernacle of the LORD: and Solomon and the congregation sought unto it. 6 And Solomon went up thither to the brasen altar before the LORD, which *was* at the tabernacle of the congregation, and offered a thousand burnt offerings upon it. 7 In that night did God appear unto Solomon, and said unto him,

“Ask what I shall give thee.”

Kirjathjearim: It was between Jerusalem and Gibeon.

The brasen altar: The place where Solomon asked for wisdom to guide his people when God spoke to him the first time.

8 And Solomon said unto God,

“Thou hast shewed great mercy unto David my father, and hast made me to reign in his stead. 9 Now, O LORD God, let thy promise unto David my father be established: for thou hast made me king over a people like the dust of the earth in multitude. 10 Give me now wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before this people: for who can judge this thy people, *that is so* great?”

Go out and come in: A common saying about Israel’s leaders about going out and leading them in battle, and bringing them back safely. Solomon never had to do this. See Deuteronomy 31:2.

11 And God said to Solomon,

“Because this was in thine heart, and thou hast not asked riches, wealth, or honour, nor the life of thine enemies, neither yet hast asked long life; but hast asked wisdom and knowledge for thyself, that thou mayest judge my people, over whom I have made thee king: 12 Wisdom and knowledge *is* granted unto thee; and I will give thee riches, and wealth, and honour, such as none of the kings have had that *have been* before thee, neither shall there any after thee have the like.”

None of the kings have had that have been before thee: This is not just referring to Saul and David, but to all kings everywhere, at any time.

13 Then Solomon came *from his journey* to the high place that *was* at Gibeon to Jerusalem, from before the tabernacle of the congregation, and reigned over Israel. 14 And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, which he placed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem.

The chariot cities: Hazor, Gezer, Jerusalem, and Megiddo. See 2nd Chronicles 8:6 and 9:25.

15 And the king made silver and gold at Jerusalem *as plenteous* as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycomore trees that *are* in the vale for abundance. 16 And Solomon had horses brought out of Egypt, and linen yarn: the king's merchants received the linen yarn at a price. 17 And they fetched up, and brought forth out of Egypt a chariot for six hundred *shekels* of silver, and an horse for an hundred and fifty: and so brought they out *horses* for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, by their means.

 All the gold, silver and cedar trees were there because of David’s in preparing for Solomon to build the temple.

For all the kings: Solomon sent horses from Egypt to the kings of the Hittites and of Syria as presents to these kings he ruled over.

Chapter Two

An house for the name of the LORD

1 And Solomon determined to build an house for the name of the LORD, and an house for his kingdom. 2 And Solomon told out threescore and ten thousand men to bear burdens, and fourscore thousand to hew in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them.

Solomon told out: To count out a certain number. (to tally).

Threescore: 60.

Fourscore: 80.

3 And Solomon sent to Huram the king of Tyre, saying,

“As thou didst deal with David my father, and didst send him cedars to build him an house to dwell therein, *even so deal with me.* 4 Behold, I build an house to the name of the LORD my God, to dedicate *it* to him, *and* to burn before him sweet incense, and for the continual shewbread, and for the burnt offerings morning and evening, on the sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts of the LORD our God. This *is an ordinance* for ever to Israel. 5 And the house which I build *is* great: for great *is* our God above all gods. 6 But who is able to build him an house, seeing the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain him? who *am* I then, that I should build him an house, save only to burn sacrifice before him? 7 Send me now therefore a man cunning to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in iron, and in purple, and crimson, and blue, and that can skill to grave with the cunning men that *are* with me in Judah and in Jerusalem, whom David my father did provide. 8 Send me also cedar trees, fir trees, and algum trees, out of Lebanon: for I know that thy servants can skill to cut timber in Lebanon; and, behold, my servants *shall be* with thy servants, 9 Even to prepare me timber in abundance: for the house which I am about to build *shall be* wonderful great. 10 And, behold, I will give to thy servants, the hewers that cut timber, twenty thousand measures of beaten wheat, and twenty thousand measures of barley, and twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil.”

The heaven and heaven of heavens: There are three heavens.

 The atmosphere we breath and the clouds above us is one, outer space is the second heaven, and the place where God’s throne is the third heaven. This phrase is used three times in the bible. See Deuteronomy 10:14.

Algum trees: See 2nd Chronicles 9:10-11.

11 Then Huram the king of Tyre answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon,

“Because the LORD hath loved his people, he hath made thee king over them.”

Huram: It is the same name as Hiram just pronounced and spelled differently. Hiram is his name coming from Hebrew to English while Huram is it coming from Phoenician to English.

12 Huram said moreover,

“Blessed *be* the LORD God of Israel, that made heaven and earth, who hath given to David the king a wise son, endued with prudence and understanding, that might build an house for the LORD, and an house for his kingdom. 13 And now I have sent a cunning man, endued with understanding, of Huram my father's, 14 The son of a woman of the daughters of Dan, and his father *was* a man of Tyre, skilful to work in gold, and in silver, in brass, in iron, in stone, and in timber, in purple, in blue, and in fine linen, and in crimson; also to grave any manner of graving, and to find out every device which shall be put to him, with thy cunning men, and with the cunning men of my lord David thy father. 15 Now therefore the wheat, and the barley, the oil, and the wine, which my lord hath spoken of, let him send unto his servants: 16 And we will cut wood out of Lebanon, as much as thou shalt need: and we will bring it to thee in floats by sea to Joppa; and thou shalt carry it up to Jerusalem.”

The daughters of Dan: From the tribe of Dan. Huram/s mother was Jewish.

17 And Solomon numbered all the strangers that *were* in the land of Israel, after the numbering wherewith David his father had numbered them; and they were found an hundred and fifty thousand and three thousand and six hundred. 18 And he set threescore and ten thousand of them *to be* bearers of burdens, and fourscore thousand *to be* hewers in the mountain, and three thousand and six hundred overseers to set the people a work.

The strangers that were in the land of Israel: Non-Israelites/Gentiles. They became the day labourers for Israel similar to what happened to the Gibeonites that tricked Israel into making a covenant with them in Joshua 9:1-27.

Chapter Three

Mount Moriah

2nd Samuel 7

1 Then Solomon began to build the house of the LORD at Jerusalem in mount Moriah, where *the LORD* appeared unto David his father, in the place that David had prepared in the threshingfloor of Ornan the Jebusite.

Mount Moriah: It was the mountain in the land of Moriah where Abraham took Isaac to sacrifice him to the LORD. See Genesis 22:2.

The threshingfloor of Ornan: See 2nd Samuel 24:18-24.

2 And he began to build in the second *day* of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign. 3 Now these *are the things wherein* Solomon was instructed for the building of the house of God.

The second day of the second month: This is the Jewish month of Zif 1st Kings 6:1. It is the same time of the year that Moses was told by the LORD to gather all the men twenty years of age and upward who could go forth to war. See Numbers 1:1-2.

The length by cubits after the first measure *was* threescore cubits, and the breadth twenty cubits. 4 And the porch that *was* in the front *of the house,* the length *of it was* according to the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and the height *was* an hundred and twenty: and he overlaid it within with pure gold. 5 And the greater house he cieled with fir tree, which he overlaid with fine gold, and set thereon palm trees and chains. 6 And he garnished the house with precious stones for beauty: and the gold *was* gold of Parvaim.

Threescore cubits: 60 cubits. A cubit is roughly 18 inches. 1 score equals 20. 2 equals 40...,

Parvaim: A place where Solomon and David got gold from.

7 He overlaid also the house, the beams, the posts, and the walls thereof, and the doors thereof, with gold; and graved cherubims on the walls.

Graved cherubims: He had Cherubims engraved on the walls of the tabernacle.

The most holy house

8 And he made the most holy house, the length whereof *was* according to the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty cubits: and he overlaid it with fine gold, *amounting* to six hundred talents. 9 And the weight of the nails *was* fifty shekels of gold. And he overlaid the upper chambers with gold.

Twenty cubits: 30 feet.

Two cherubims

10 And in the most holy house he made two cherubims of image work, and overlaid them with gold. 11 And the wings of the cherubims *were* twenty cubits long: one wing *of the one cherub was* five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing *was likewise* five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub. 12 And *one* wing of the other cherub *was* five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house: and the other wing *was* five cubits *also,* joining to the wing of the other cherub. 13 The wings of these cherubims spread themselves forth twenty cubits: and they stood on their feet, and their faces *were* inward.

Cherubims: The letters “im” at the end of a word make it Plural in Hebrew. See Exodus 25:19.

Cherub: Singular. Lucifer was the anointed cherub. See Ezekiel 28:14-16.

Five cubits: Seven feet six inches.

The vail of the temple

14 And he made the vail *of* blue, and purple, and crimson, and fine linen, and wrought cherubims thereon.

The vail: Was made of four colors, blue, purple, crimson and white. The vail had cherubims sewn into the vail in each colored section.

15 Also he made before the house two pillars of thirty and five cubits high, and the chapiter that *was* on the top of each of them *was* five cubits. 16 And he made chains, *as* in the oracle, and put *them* on the heads of the pillars; and made an hundred pomegranates, and put *them* on the chains. 17 And he reared up the pillars before the temple, one on the right hand, and the other on the left; and called the name of that on the right hand Jachin, and the name of that on the left Boaz.

As in the oracle: The word of God in the ark. See 1st Kings 6:21.

An hundred pomegranates: Pomegranates are said to contain 613 seeds inside each of them. One for each commandment in the law.

Jachin: The pillar on the right. A priest over the 21st course of priests set up by David in 1st Chronicles 24:17.

Boaz: The pillar on the left. The husband of Ruth. The kinsman redeemer. A type of Christ.

Chapter Four

The altar of brass

1 Moreover he made an altar of brass, twenty cubits the length thereof, and twenty cubits the breadth thereof, and ten cubits the height thereof. 2 Also he made a molten sea of ten cubits from brim to brim, round in compass, and five cubits the height thereof; and a line of thirty cubits did compass it round about.

An altar of brass: See Exodus 27:1-2.

A molten sea: For the priest to wash in. See Exodus 30:18.

3 And under it *was* the similitude of oxen, which did compass it round about: ten in a cubit, compassing the sea round about. Two rows of oxen *were* cast, when it was cast. 4 It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east: and the sea *was set* above upon them, and all their hinder parts *were* inward.

Twelve oxen: Were underneath the molten sea holding it up. They each represented one of the tribes of Israel as they were lined up in camp in the wilderness. See Numbers 2:2.

North

Dan Asher Naphthali

 Benjamin Levi Judah

East Manasseh Levi Tabernacle Levi Issachar West

 Ephraim Levi Zebulun

Gad Simeon Reuben

South

5 And the thickness of it *was* an handbreadth, and the brim of it like the work of the brim of a cup, with flowers of lilies; *and* it received and held three thousand baths.

With flowers of lilies: Lilies were engraved on the outside of the molten sea. Lilies are mentioned ten times in the bible, and six of them are in the Song of Solomon 2:16, 4:5, 5:13, 6:2-3, & 7:2. The Messiah feeds among the lilies in the field.

Three thousand baths: See Ezekiel 45:11. One bath contained enough water for one priest to completely wash in.

6 He made also ten lavers, and put five on the right hand, and five on the left, to wash in them: such things as they offered for the burnt offering they washed in them; but the sea *was* for the priests to wash in. 7 And he made ten candlesticks of gold according to their form, and set *them* in the temple, five on the right hand, and five on the left. 8 He made also ten tables, and placed *them* in the temple, five on the right side, and five on the left. And he made an hundred basons of gold. 9 Furthermore he made the court of the priests, and the great court, and doors for the court, and overlaid the doors of them with brass. 10 And he set the sea on the right side of the east end, over against the south.

Lavers: To wash in.

He set the sea on the right side: The molten sea.

11 And Huram made the pots, and the shovels, and the basons. And Huram finished the work that he was to make for king Solomon for the house of God; 12 *To wit,* the two pillars, and the pommels, and the chapiters *which were* on the top of the two pillars, and the two wreaths to cover the two pommels of the chapiters which *were* on the top of the pillars;

To wit: More specifically, or to be precise.

The two pillars: The ones with the names of Jachin and Boaz on them.

13 And four hundred pomegranates on the two wreaths; two rows of pomegranates on each wreath, to cover the two pommels of the chapiters which *were* upon the pillars. 14 He made also bases, and lavers made he upon the bases;

Pomegranates: They are symbolic of the fruitfulness that the law will produce. It is said that there are roughly 613 seeds in a pomegranate. One for each tenant in the law.

15 One sea, and twelve oxen under it. 16 The pots also, and the shovels, and the fleshhooks, and all their instruments, did Huram his father make to king Solomon for the house of the LORD of bright brass. 17 In the plain of Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zeredathah. 18 Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance: for the weight of the brass could not be found out.

In the plain of Jordan: See Genesis 13:10.

The vessels for the house of God

19 And Solomon made all the vessels that *were for* the house of God, the golden altar also, and the tables whereon the shewbread *was set;* 20 Moreover the candlesticks with their lamps, that they should burn after the manner before the oracle, of pure gold;

Shewbread: A table which held twelve loaves of unleavened bread.

Candlesticks: The Menorah. A lamp with seven candles on it.

Oracle: The word of God. The two tables containing the ten commandments.

21 And the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs, *made he of* gold, *and* that perfect gold; 22 And the snuffers, and the basons, and the spoons, and the censers, *of* pure gold: and the entry of the house, the inner doors thereof for the most holy *place,* and the doors of the house of the temple, *were of* gold.

Snuffers: For distinguishing flames.

Chapter Five

The work was finished

1 Thus all the work that Solomon made for the house of the LORD was finished: and Solomon brought in *all* the things that David his father had dedicated; and the silver, and the gold, and all the instruments, put he among the treasures of the house of God.

 Rooms were built alongside the temple for the treasures and things dedicated towards the upkeep of the temple.

2 Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the chief of the fathers of the children of Israel, unto Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of the LORD out of the city of David, which *is* Zion. 3 Wherefore all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto the king in the feast which *was* in the seventh month.

The ark of the covenant of the LORD: The ark carried to the ten commandments. See Numbers 10:33.

The city of David: Located on the south side of the city of Jerusalem.

Zion: See 2nd Samuel 5:7.

The feast which was in the seventh month: The feast of Tabernacles. See Leviticus 23:34.

4 And all the elders of Israel came; and the Levites took up the ark. 5 And they brought up the ark, and the tabernacle of the congregation, and all the holy vessels that *were* in the tabernacle, these did the priests *and* the Levites bring up.

The tabernacle: The tent that housed the ark.

6 Also king Solomon, and all the congregation of Israel that were assembled unto him before the ark, sacrificed sheep and oxen, which could not be told nor numbered for multitude. 7 And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of the LORD unto his place, to the oracle of the house, into the most holy *place, even* under the wings of the cherubims: 8 For the cherubims spread forth *their* wings over the place of the ark, and the cherubims covered the ark and the staves thereof above. 9 And they drew out the staves *of the ark,* that the ends of the staves were seen from the ark before the oracle; but they were not seen without. And there it is unto this day.

The ark of the covenant: The golden case that had the ten commandments (the covenant) in it, and upon which the mercy seat sat with the cherubims upon it. See Numbers 10:33.

The oracle: See 1st Kings 16:5-31. The Ark of the covenant containing the ten commandments.

The cherubims: Two cherub angles. Lucifer was a cherub.

10 *There was* nothing in the ark save the two tables which Moses put *therein* at Horeb, when the LORD made *a covenant* with the children of Israel, when they came out of Egypt.

The two tables: The two tables of stone upon which the ten commandments were written.

At Horeb: Mount Sinai. See Exodus 3:1.

11 And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy *place:* (for all the priests *that were* present were sanctified, *and* did not *then* wait by course:

The holy place: The room outside the holy of holies where the table of shewbread was, the lampstand and the altar of incense were also there.

And did not wait by course: David set up 24 courses of priests each ministering for two weeks out of the year. See 1st Chronicles 24:10.

12 Also the Levites *which were* the singers, all of them of Asaph, of Heman, of Jeduthun, with their sons and their brethren, *being* arrayed in white linen, having cymbals and psalteries and harps, stood at the east end of the altar, and with them an hundred and twenty priests sounding with trumpets:

Of Asaph, of Heman, of Jeduthun: Jeduthun is also called Ethan. See 1st Chronicles 15:17.

13 It came even to pass, as the trumpeters and singers *were* as one, to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking the LORD; and when they lifted up *their* voice with the trumpets and cymbals and instruments of musick, and praised the LORD, *saying,*

“For *he is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever:”

that *then* the house was filled with a cloud, *even* the house of the LORD; 14 So that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of God.

The house was filled with a cloud: The glory of the LORD filled the house of God. The cloud was the glory of the LORD.

Chapter Six

Solomon blesses the LORD

1 Then said Solomon,

“The LORD hath said that he would dwell in the thick darkness. 2 But I have built an house of habitation for thee, and a place for thy dwelling for ever.”

The thick darkness: See Exodus 20:21.

3 And the king turned his face, and blessed the whole congregation of Israel: and all the congregation of Israel stood. 4 And he said,

“Blessed *be* the LORD God of Israel, who hath with his hands fulfilled *that* which he spake with his mouth to my father David, saying, 5 Since the day that I brought forth my people out of the land of Egypt I chose no city among all the tribes of Israel to build an house in, that my name might be there; neither chose I any man to be a ruler over my people Israel: 6 But I have chosen Jerusalem, that my name might be there; and have chosen David to be over my people Israel. 7 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build an house for the name of the LORD God of Israel. 8 But the LORD said to David my father, Forasmuch as it was in thine heart to build an house for my name, thou didst well in that it was in thine heart: 9 Notwithstanding thou shalt not build the house; but thy son which shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the house for my name. 10 The LORD therefore hath performed his word that he hath spoken: for I am risen up in the room of David my father, and am set on the throne of Israel, as the LORD promised, and have built the house for the name of the LORD God of Israel. 11 And in it have I put the ark, wherein *is* the covenant of the LORD, that he made with the children of Israel.”

12 And he stood before the altar of the LORD in the presence of all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands: 13 For Solomon had made a brasen scaffold, of five cubits long, and five cubits broad, and three cubits high, and had set it in the midst of the court: and upon it he stood, and kneeled down upon his knees before all the congregation of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven, 14 And said,

“O LORD God of Israel, *there is* no God like thee in the heaven, nor in the earth; which keepest covenant, and *shewest* mercy unto thy servants, that walk before thee with all their hearts: 15 Thou which hast kept with thy servant David my father that which thou hast promised him; and spakest with thy mouth, and hast fulfilled *it* with thine hand, as *it is* this day. 16 Now therefore, O LORD God of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that which thou hast promised him, saying, There shall not fail thee a man in my sight to sit upon the throne of Israel; yet so that thy children take heed to their way to walk in my law, as thou hast walked before me. 17 Now then, O LORD God of Israel, let thy word be verified, which thou hast spoken unto thy servant David. 18 But will God in very deed dwell with men on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house which I have built! 19 Have respect therefore to the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O LORD my God, to hearken unto the cry and the prayer which thy servant prayeth before thee: 20 That thine eyes may be open upon this house day and night, upon the place whereof thou hast said that thou wouldest put thy name there; to hearken unto the prayer which thy servant prayeth toward this place. 21 Hearken therefore unto the supplications of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, which they shall make toward this place: hear thou from thy dwelling place, *even* from heaven; and when thou hearest, forgive. 22 If a man sin against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to make him swear, and the oath come before thine altar in this house; 23 Then hear thou from heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, by requiting the wicked, by recompensing his way upon his own head; and by justifying the righteous, by giving him according to his righteousness. 24 And if thy people Israel be put to the worse before the enemy, because they have sinned against thee; and shall return and confess thy name, and pray and make supplication before thee in this house; 25 Then hear thou from the heavens, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which thou gavest to them and to their fathers. 26 When the heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; *yet* if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, when thou dost afflict them; 27 Then hear thou from heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, when thou hast taught them the good way, wherein they should walk; and send rain upon thy land, which thou hast given unto thy people for an inheritance. 28 If there be dearth in the land, if there be pestilence, if there be blasting, or mildew, locusts, or caterpillers; if their enemies besiege them in the cities of their land; whatsoever sore or whatsoever sickness *there be:* 29 *Then* what prayer *or* what supplication soever shall be made of any man, or of all thy people Israel, when every one shall know his own sore and his own grief, and shall spread forth his hands in this house: 30 Then hear thou from heaven thy dwelling place, and forgive, and render unto every man according unto all his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou only knowest the hearts of the children of men: 31 That they may fear thee, to walk in thy ways, so long as they live in the land which thou gavest unto our fathers. 32 Moreover concerning the stranger, which is not of thy people Israel, but is come from a far country for thy great name's sake, and thy mighty hand, and thy stretched out arm; if they come and pray in this house; 33 Then hear thou from the heavens, *even* from thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to thee for; that all people of the earth may know thy name, and fear thee, as *doth* thy people Israel, and may know that this house which I have built is called by thy name. 34 If thy people go out to war against their enemies by the way that thou shalt send them, and they pray unto thee toward this city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name; 35 Then hear thou from the heavens their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause. 36 If they sin against thee, (for *there is* no man which sinneth not,) and thou be angry with them, and deliver them over before *their* enemies, and they carry them away captives unto a land far off or near; 37 Yet *if* they bethink themselves in the land whither they are carried captive, and turn and pray unto thee in the land of their captivity, saying, We have sinned, we have done amiss, and have dealt wickedly; 38 If they return to thee with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their captivity, whither they have carried them captives, and pray toward their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, and *toward* the city which thou hast chosen, and toward the house which I have built for thy name: 39 Then hear thou from the heavens, *even* from thy dwelling place, their prayer and their supplications, and maintain their cause, and forgive thy people which have sinned against thee. 40 Now, my God, let, I beseech thee, thine eyes be open, and *let* thine ears *be* attent unto the prayer *that is made* in this place. 41 Now therefore arise, O LORD God, into thy resting place, thou, and the ark of thy strength: let thy priests, O LORD God, be clothed with salvation, and let thy saints rejoice in goodness. 42 O LORD God, turn not away the face of thine anointed: remember the mercies of David thy servant.”

Chapter Seven

The fire came down from heaven

1 Now when Solomon had made an end of praying, the fire came down from heaven, and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices; and the glory of the LORD filled the house. 2 And the priests could not enter into the house of the LORD, because the glory of the LORD had filled the LORD'S house. 3 And when all the children of Israel saw how the fire came down, and the glory of the LORD upon the house, they bowed themselves with their faces to the ground upon the pavement, and worshipped, and praised the LORD, *saying,*

“For *he is* good; for his mercy *endureth* for ever.”

The fire came down from heaven: Just like when Elijah offered an offering to prove the LORD was God to the followers of Baal. See 1st Kings 17:38.

The glory of the LORD: See Exodus 16:7-10.

4 Then the king and all the people offered sacrifices before the LORD. 5 And king Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty and two thousand oxen, and an hundred and twenty thousand sheep: so the king and all the people dedicated the house of God. 6 And the priests waited on their offices: the Levites also with instruments of musick of the LORD, which David the king had made to praise the LORD, because his mercy *endureth* for ever, when David praised by their ministry; and the priests sounded trumpets before them, and all Israel stood. 7 Moreover Solomon hallowed the middle of the court that *was* before the house of the LORD: for there he offered burnt offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings, because the brasen altar which Solomon had made was not able to receive the burnt offerings, and the meat offerings, and the fat.

Solomon hallowed the middle court: This was because he had offered so many animals to the LORD that the altar could not contain the offerings.

8 Also at the same time Solomon kept the feast seven days, and all Israel with him, a very great congregation, from the entering in of Hamath unto the river of Egypt.

The entering in of Hamath: A city north of Damascus in northern Syria not far from Haran where Abram dwelt before entering into Canaan land.

9 And in the eighth day they made a solemn assembly: for they kept the dedication of the altar seven days, and the feast seven days.10 And on the three and twentieth day of the seventh month he sent the people away into their tents, glad and merry in heart for the goodness that the LORD had shewed unto David, and to Solomon, and to Israel his people.

The three and twentieth day of the seventh month: Noah’s ark rested on the seventeenth day of the seventh month in the middle of this 14 days. See Genesis 8:4.

 The feast of Atonement occurred on the tenth day of the seventh month. Leviticus 23:27.

 The feast of Tabernacles began on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, and it lasted until the 21st. See Leviticus 23:34.

11 Thus Solomon finished the house of the LORD, and the king's house: and all that came into Solomon's heart to make in the house of the LORD, and in his own house, he prosperously effected.

The LORD appears to Solomon a second time

12 And the LORD appeared to Solomon by night, and said unto him,

“I have heard thy prayer, and have chosen this place to myself for an house of sacrifice. 13 If I shut up heaven that there be no rain, or if I command the locusts to devour the land, or if I send pestilence among my people; 14 If my people, which are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land. 15 Now mine eyes shall be open, and mine ears attent unto the prayer *that is made* in this place. 16 For now have I chosen and sanctified this house, that my name may be there for ever: and mine eyes and mine heart shall be there perpetually. 17 And as for thee, if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, and do according to all that I have commanded thee, and shalt observe my statutes and my judgments; 18 Then will I stablish the throne of thy kingdom, according as I have covenanted with David thy father, saying, There shall not fail thee a man *to be* ruler in Israel. 19 But if ye turn away, and forsake my statutes and my commandments, which I have set before you, and shall go and serve other gods, and worship them; 20 Then will I pluck them up by the roots out of my land which I have given them; and this house, which I have sanctified for my name, will I cast out of my sight, and will make it *to be* a proverb and a byword among all nations. 21 And this house, which is high, shall be an astonishment to every one that passeth by it; so that he shall say, Why hath the LORD done thus unto this land, and unto this house? 22 And it shall be answered, Because they forsook the LORD God of their fathers, which brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, and laid hold on other gods, and worshipped them, and served them: therefore hath he brought all this evil upon them.”

If my people: His people are the descendants of Israel, not the church today.

Which are called by my name: This is first time this phrase is used in the bible. It is also used in reference to the city of Jerusalem. See Isaiah 43:7-8.

Chapter Eight

Solomon builds up his kingdom

1 And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, wherein Solomon had built the house of the LORD, and his own house, 2 That the cities which Huram had restored to Solomon, Solomon built them, and caused the children of Israel to dwell there. 3 And Solomon went to Hamathzobah, and prevailed against it. 4 And he built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities, which he built in Hamath. 5 Also he built Bethhoron the upper, and Bethhoron the nether, fenced cities, with walls, gates, and bars;

Huram: Hiram.

Hamathzobah: Hamath and Zobah were neighboring cities with kings over them in the Lebanon and Syria area near where Abraham entered the land originally.

Bethhoron the upper: The upper part of the city Bethhoron.

Bethhoron the nether: The lower part of the city Bethhoron.

6 And Baalath, and all the store cities that Solomon had, and all the chariot cities, and the cities of the horsemen, and all that Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and throughout all the land of his dominion.

The chariot cities: Hazor, Gezer, Jerusalem, and Megiddo. See 2nd Chronicles 8:6 and 9:25.

Baalath: See 1st Kings 9:16-18.

7 *As for* all the people *that were* left of the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which *were* not of Israel, 8 *But* of their children, who were left after them in the land, whom the children of Israel consumed not, them did Solomon make to pay tribute until this day.

To pay tribute: They were labourers for Israel (they should have been expelled) and their pay was taxed because they were not Israelites.

The children of Israel were men of war

9 But of the children of Israel did Solomon make no servants for his work; but they *were* men of war, and chief of his captains, and captains of his chariots and horsemen. 10 And these *were* the chief of king Solomon's officers, *even* two hundred and fifty, that bare rule over the people.

They were men of war: God wanted Israel to know how to fight but they did not need to fight all the days of Solomon because they were so mighty that no one dared to challenge them.

The daughter of Pharaoh

11 And Solomon brought up the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David unto the house that he had built for her: for he said,

“My wife shall not dwell in the house of David king of Israel, because *the places are* holy, whereunto the ark of the LORD hath come.”

 Solomon built a house for the daughter of Pharoah because she was a heathen worshipper of many gods, and it was not right for her to be there amongst the holy places of the one true God.

Solomon’s offerings

12 Then Solomon offered burnt offerings unto the LORD on the altar of the LORD, which he had built before the porch, 13 Even after a certain rate every day, offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the solemn feasts, three times in the year, *even* in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles.

A certain rate every day: The morning and evening sacrifices. See 2nd Kings 16:15.

The twenty-four courses of priests

14 And he appointed, according to the order of David his father, the courses of the priests to their service, and the Levites to their charges, to praise and minister before the priests, as the duty of every day required: the porters also by their courses at every gate: for so had David the man of God commanded. 15 And they departed not from the commandment of the king unto the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the treasures. 16 Now all the work of Solomon was prepared unto the day of the foundation of the house of the LORD, and until it was finished. *So* the house of the LORD was perfected.

The man of God: This phrase is used 78 times in the bible and 76 of them are in the old testament. It referred to prophets, priests, and kings.

 It is used twice by the apostle Paul to Timothy in 1st Timothy 6:11 and in a general sense all believers in 2nd Timothy 3:17.

 Many pastors wrongly use the old testament sense of the words to declare that they are the man of God in their church, and that they should not be opposed, or God will chasten them.

Gold of Ophir

17 Then went Solomon to Eziongeber, and to Eloth, at the sea side in the land of Edom. 18 And Huram sent him by the hands of his servants ships, and servants that had knowledge of the sea; and they went with the servants of Solomon to Ophir, and took thence four hundred and fifty talents of gold, and brought *them* to king Solomon.

Eziongeber: This is near modern-day Eilat (Eloth) in the city of Aqaba Jordan.

Eloth: Modern day Eilat. The southern tip of Israel at the Red sea.

Ophir: It was a place settled by Ophir, the son of Joktan. See 1st Chronicles 1:23.

Chapter Nine

The queen of Sheba

1 And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon, she came to prove Solomon with hard questions at Jerusalem, with a very great company, and camels that bare spices, and gold in abundance, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart. 2 And Solomon told her all her questions: and there was nothing hid from Solomon which he told her not.

Sheba: Ethiopia. See Genesis 10:7.

 Solomon not only answered the queens questions, but he told them the source of his wisdom which was the LORD God of Israel, and he told her of the LORD’S eternal purpose for the nation of Israel as you will see in her response.

3 And when the queen of Sheba had seen the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built, 4 And the meat of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the attendance of his ministers, and their apparel; his cupbearers also, and their apparel; and his ascent by which he went up into the house of the LORD; there was no more spirit in her.

There was no more spirit in her: She was dumbfounded, awestruck.

5 And she said to the king,

“*It was* a true report which I heard in mine own land of thine acts, and of thy wisdom: 6 Howbeit I believed not their words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen *it:* and, behold, the one half of the greatness of thy wisdom was not told me: *for* thou exceedest the fame that I heard. 7 Happy *are* thy men, and happy *are* these thy servants, which stand continually before thee, and hear thy wisdom. 8 Blessed be the LORD thy God, which delighted in thee to set thee on his throne, *to be* king for the LORD thy God: because thy God loved Israel, to establish them for ever, therefore made he thee king over them, to do judgment and justice.”

9 And she gave the king an hundred and twenty talents of gold, and of spices great abundance, and precious stones: neither was there any such spice as the queen of Sheba gave king Solomon.

Neither was there any such spice: The chief of all spices found only in Sheba. See Ezekiel 27:22. In Ethiopia.

10 And the servants also of Huram, and the servants of Solomon, which brought gold from Ophir, brought algum trees and precious stones. 11 And the king made *of* the algum trees terraces to the house of the LORD, and to the king's palace, and harps and psalteries for singers: and there were none such seen before in the land of Judah.

Algum trees: From Lebanon. See 2nd Chronicles 2:8.

12 And king Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, beside *that* which she had brought unto the king. So she turned, and went away to her own land, she and her servants.

666

13 Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and threescore and six talents of gold;

Threescore: Equals sixty. A score equals twenty. 20 x 3 = 60. 600+60+6=666.

14 Beside *that which* chapmen and merchants brought. And all the kings of Arabia and governors of the country brought gold and silver to Solomon. 15 And king Solomon made two hundred targets *of* beaten gold: six hundred *shekels* of beaten gold went to one target. 16 And three hundred shields *made he of* beaten gold: three hundred *shekels* of gold went to one shield. And the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.

Chapmen: Traders.

A great throne of Ivory

17 Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with pure gold. 18 And *there were* six steps to the throne, with a footstool of gold, *which were* fastened to the throne, and stays on each side of the sitting place, and two lions standing by the stays: 19 And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps. There was not the like made in any kingdom.

Six steps: Each had two lions on them facing each other for a total of 12 lions. 6 steps + 6 lions on the left side + 6 lions of the right side = 666.

20 And all the drinking vessels of king Solomon *were of* gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon *were of* pure gold: none *were of* silver; it was *not* any thing accounted of in the days of Solomon. 21 For the king's ships went to Tarshish with the servants of Huram: every three years once came the ships of Tarshish bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.

The ships of Tarshish: Tarshish was in Africa. Ivory, apes, and peacocks do not come from Spain or England.

Huram: Hiram.

Solomon’s riches

22 And king Solomon passed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. 23 And all the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom, that God had put in his heart. 24 And they brought every man his present, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and raiment, harness, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.

The chariot cities

25 And Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; whom he bestowed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem. 26 And he reigned over all the kings from the river even unto the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.

The chariot cities: Hazor, Gezer, Jerusalem, and Megiddo. See 2nd Chronicles 8:6 and 9:25.

The river: The Euphrates.

27 And the king made silver in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar trees made he as the sycomore trees that *are* in the low plains in abundance. 28 And they brought unto Solomon horses out of Egypt, and out of all lands.

The acts of Solomon

29 Now the rest of the acts of Solomon, first and last, *are* they not written in the book of Nathan the prophet, and in the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the visions of Iddo the seer against Jeroboam the son of Nebat? 30 And Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel forty years. 31 And Solomon slept with his fathers, and he was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

The book of Nathan the prophet: The writings of the Nathen the prophet in the actual scriptures.

The prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite: See 1st Kings 11:29-39.

The visions of Iddo the seer against Jeroboam: Iddo is mentioned in 2nd Chronicles 13:22.

Warning: These books are also called part of the “lost books of the bible.” There are no lost books of the bible. The books that God wanted in the bible are in the bible.

Chapter Ten

Rehoboam and Jeroboam

1 And Rehoboam went to Shechem: for to Shechem were all Israel come to make him king. 2 And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who *was* in Egypt, whither he had fled from the presence of Solomon the king, heard *it,* that Jeroboam returned out of Egypt.

Shechem: A city in the land allotted to the tribe of Manasseh. See Joshua 17:7. Where Abimelech also was made king. Judges 9:6.

Jeroboam returned: He fled to Egypt because Solomon wanted him dead because it was prophesied that he would rule the ten northern tribes. See 1st Kings 11:9-13.

3 And they sent and called him. So Jeroboam and all Israel came and spake to Rehoboam, saying,

“4 Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore ease thou somewhat the grievous servitude of thy father, and his heavy yoke that he put upon us, and we will serve thee.”

5 And he said unto them,

“Come again unto me after three days.”

And the people departed. 6 And king Rehoboam took counsel with the old men that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying,

“What counsel give ye *me* to return answer to this people?”

7 And they spake unto him, saying,

“If thou be kind to this people, and please them, and speak good words to them, they will be thy servants for ever.”

8 But he forsook the counsel which the old men gave him, and took counsel with the young men that were brought up with him, that stood before him. 9 And he said unto them,

“What advice give ye that we may return answer to this people, which have spoken to me, saying, Ease somewhat the yoke that thy father did put upon us?”

10 And the young men that were brought up with him spake unto him, saying,

“Thus shalt thou answer the people that spake unto thee, saying, Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou *it* somewhat lighter for us; thus shalt thou say unto them, My little *finger* shall be thicker than my father's loins. 11 For whereas my father put a heavy yoke upon you, I will put more to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.”

12 So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king bade, saying,

“Come again to me on the third day.”

13 And the king answered them roughly; and king Rehoboam forsook the counsel of the old men, 14 And answered them after the advice of the young men, saying,

“My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add thereto: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.”

15 So the king hearkened not unto the people: for the cause was of God, that the LORD might perform his word, which he spake by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

The cause was of God, that the LORD might perform his word, which he spake by the hand of Ahijah: See 1st Kings 11:29-39.

16 And when all Israel *saw* that the king would not hearken unto them, the people answered the king, saying,

“What portion have we in David? and *we have* none inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to your tents, O Israel: *and* now, David, see to thine own house.”

What portion have we in David: They were from ten different tribes.

O Israel: They became known as the kingdom of Israel, while the tribes of Judah and Benjamin became known as the kingdom of Judah from then on.

So all Israel went to their tents. 17 But *as for* the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them. 18 Then king Rehoboam sent Hadoram that *was* over the tribute; and the children of Israel stoned him with stones, that he died. But king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to *his* chariot, to flee to Jerusalem. 19 And Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day.

The children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah: Israelites from the ten northern tribes who worked and lived in Judah’s cities (like many of the Levites).

Hadoram that was over the tribute: He was sent by Rehoboam to the northern tribes to gather tribute money but was killed by them.

Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day: The ten northern tribes broke away from the house of David (the tribe of Judah) even until the time of the writing of 2nd Chronicles and they will be reunited in the kingdom.

Chapter Eleven

Ye shall not go up

1 And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he gathered of the house of Judah and Benjamin an hundred and fourscore thousand chosen *men,* which were warriors, to fight against Israel, that he might bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam. 2 But the word of the LORD came to Shemaiah the man of God, saying,

“3 Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, saying, 4 Thus saith the LORD,”

“Ye shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren: return every man to his house: for this thing is done of me.”

And they obeyed the words of the LORD, and returned from going against Jeroboam. 5 And Rehoboam dwelt in Jerusalem, and built cities for defence in Judah. 6 He built even Bethlehem, and Etam, and Tekoa, 7 And Bethzur, and Shoco, and Adullam, 8 And Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph, 9 And Adoraim, and Lachish, and Azekah, 10 And Zorah, and Aijalon, and Hebron, which *are* in Judah and in Benjamin fenced cities. 11 And he fortified the strong holds, and put captains in them, and store of victual, and of oil and wine. 12 And in every several city *he put* shields and spears, and made them exceeding strong, having Judah and Benjamin on his side.

He built even Bethlehem: Bethlehem was already built, as were many of these cities, but he fortified them.

The priests and the Levites

13 And the priests and the Levites that *were* in all Israel resorted to him out of all their coasts. 14 For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession, and came to Judah and Jerusalem: for Jeroboam and his sons had cast them off from executing the priest's office unto the LORD:

The priests and the Levites: They all moved to Judah to live and work there near the temple because Jeroboam had cast them off because of their loyalty to the temple.

15 And he ordained him priests for the high places, and for the devils, and for the calves which he had made.

The high places: Places to worship devils on hilltops.

The caves which he made: One in Dan and the other in Bethel. 1st Kings 12:29 and 14:16.

Three years

16 And after them out of all the tribes of Israel such as set their hearts to seek the LORD God of Israel came to Jerusalem, to sacrifice unto the LORD God of their fathers. 17 So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah, and made Rehoboam the son of Solomon strong, three years: for three years they walked in the way of David and Solomon.

Three years: It only took Rehoboam three years to turn from following the LORD.

Rehoboam’s wives and children

18 And Rehoboam took him Mahalath the daughter of Jerimoth the son of David to wife, *and* Abihail the daughter of Eliab the son of Jesse; 19 Which bare him children; Jeush, and Shamariah, and Zaham. 20 And after her he took Maachah the daughter of Absalom; which bare him Abijah, and Attai, and Ziza, and Shelomith.

Maachah

21 And Rehoboam loved Maachah the daughter of Absalom above all his wives and his concubines: (for he took eighteen wives, and threescore concubines; and begat twenty and eight sons, and threescore daughters.

Maachah: The name originated with the daughter of the king of Geshur whom David married. She was the mother of Absalom, but she was a heathen, and trouble followed her lineage.

Abijah the chief ruler

22 And Rehoboam made Abijah the son of Maachah the chief, *to be* ruler among his brethren: for *he thought* to make him king. 23 And he dealt wisely, and dispersed of all his children throughout all the countries of Judah and Benjamin, unto every fenced city: and he gave them victual in abundance. And he desired many wives.

The son of Maachah: Absalom’s mother was named Maachah, and Absalom named his daughter after her. Rehoboam married her and made their son Abijah ruler.

 Absalom’s mother was the daughter of the king of Gath whose name was Maachah as well. See 1st Kings 2:39. He was a pagan king with pagan gods.

He desired many wives: This was the downfall of his father. He loved many strange women who drew his heart away from the LORD.

Chapter Twelve

Rehoboam forsook the law of the LORD

1 And it came to pass, when Rehoboam had established the kingdom, and had strengthened himself, he forsook the law of the LORD, and all Israel with him.

He forsook the LORD, and all Israel with him: As goes the head so goes the body. Rehoboam forsook the LORD, and the people followed him.

Shishak king of Egypt attacks

2 And it came to pass, *that* in the fifth year of king Rehoboam Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, because they had transgressed against the LORD, 3 With twelve hundred chariots, and threescore thousand horsemen: and the people *were* without number that came with him out of Egypt; the Lubims, the Sukkiims, and the Ethiopians. 4 And he took the fenced cities which *pertained* to Judah, and came to Jerusalem.

Because they had transgressed the LORD: God brought the Egyptian upon Jerusalem because they forsook him.

The Lubims: South of Egypt. See Nahum 3:9.

The Sukkiims: Tent dwellers.

Shemaiah the prophet

5 Then came Shemaiah the prophet to Rehoboam, and *to* the princes of Judah, that were gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak, and said unto them,

“Thus saith the LORD, Ye have forsaken me, and therefore have I also left you in the hand of Shishak.”

6 Whereupon the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves; and they said,

“The LORD *is* righteous.”

7 And when the LORD saw that they humbled themselves, the word of the LORD came to Shemaiah, saying,

“They have humbled themselves; *therefore* I will not destroy them, but I will grant them some deliverance; and my wrath shall not be poured out upon Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak. 8 Nevertheless they shall be his servants; that they may know my service, and the service of the kingdoms of the countries.”

The temple treasures are taken away

9 So Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, and took away the treasures of the house of the LORD, and the treasures of the king's house; he took all: he carried away also the shields of gold which Solomon had made. 10 Instead of which king Rehoboam made shields of brass, and committed *them* to the hands of the chief of the guard, that kept the entrance of the king's house. 11 And when the king entered into the house of the LORD, the guard came and fetched them, and brought them again into the guard chamber. 12 And when he humbled himself, the wrath of the LORD turned from him, that he would not destroy *him* altogether: and also in Judah things went well.

 Judah would pay tribute to Egypt for a while and then they would turn back to the LORD if their king did.

13 So king Rehoboam strengthened himself in Jerusalem, and reigned: for Rehoboam *was* one and forty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which the LORD had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there. And his mother's name *was* Naamah an Ammonitess. 14 And he did evil, because he prepared not his heart to seek the LORD.

To put his name there: The name YHVH Yahweh.

Naamah an Ammonitess: She was a wife from the heathen enemies of the LORD, and she led him away from the LORD.

15 Now the acts of Rehoboam, first and last, *are* they not written in the book of Shemaiah the prophet, and of Iddo the seer concerning genealogies? And *there were* wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually. 16 And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David: and Abijah his son reigned in his stead.

The book of Shemaiah the prophet: See 1st Kings 12:22, 2nd Chronicles 11:2 and 12:5-7 above.

Iddo the seer: See 2nd Chronicles 9:12 and 13:22.

 The war years are not recorded here in 2nd Chronicles.

Chapter Thirteen

Abijah reigns in Judah

1 Now in the eighteenth year of king Jeroboam began Abijah to reign over Judah. 2 He reigned three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Michaiah the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

Michaiah the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah: Her father Uriel was not the Uriel of the Kohathites.

3 And Abijah set the battle in array with an army of valiant men of war, *even* four hundred thousand chosen men: Jeroboam also set the battle in array against him with eight hundred thousand chosen men, *being* mighty men of valour. 4 And Abijah stood up upon mount Zemaraim, which *is* in mount Ephraim, and said,

“Hear me, thou Jeroboam, and all Israel; 5 Ought ye not to know that the LORD God of Israel gave the kingdom over Israel to David for ever, *even* to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt? 6 Yet Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon the son of David, is risen up, and hath rebelled against his lord. 7 And there are gathered unto him vain men, the children of Belial, and have strengthened themselves against Rehoboam the son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and tenderhearted, and could not withstand them. 8 And now ye think to withstand the kingdom of the LORD in the hand of the sons of David; and ye *be* a great multitude, and *there are* with you golden calves, which Jeroboam made you for gods. 9 Have ye not cast out the priests of the LORD, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and have made you priests after the manner of the nations of *other* lands? so that whosoever cometh to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams, *the same* may be a priest of *them that are* no gods. 10 But as for us, the LORD *is* our God, and we have not forsaken him; and the priests, which minister unto the LORD, *are* the sons of Aaron, and the Levites *wait* upon *their* business: 11 And they burn unto the LORD every morning and every evening burnt sacrifices and sweet incense: the shewbread also *set they in order* upon the pure table; and the candlestick of gold with the lamps thereof, to burn every evening: for we keep the charge of the LORD our God; but ye have forsaken him. 12 And, behold, God himself *is* with us for *our* captain, and his priests with sounding trumpets to cry alarm against you. O children of Israel, fight ye not against the LORD God of your fathers; for ye shall not prosper.”

By a covenant of salt: See Leviticus 2:13 & Numbers 18:19.

Golden calves: The ones Jeroboam set up in Bethel and Dan.

The LORD is our God: The LORD is Jehovah. Jeroboam’s people worshipped golden calves.

An ambushment

13 But Jeroboam caused an ambushment to come about behind them: so they were before Judah, and the ambushment *was* behind them. 14 And when Judah looked back, behold, the battle *was* before and behind: and they cried unto the LORD, and the priests sounded with the trumpets. 15 Then the men of Judah gave a shout: and as the men of Judah shouted, it came to pass, that God smote Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. 16 And the children of Israel fled before Judah: and God delivered them into their hand. 17 And Abijah and his people slew them with a great slaughter: so there fell down slain of Israel five hundred thousand chosen men. 18 Thus the children of Israel were brought under at that time, and the children of Judah prevailed, because they relied upon the LORD God of their fathers. 19 And Abijah pursued after Jeroboam, and took cities from him, Bethel with the towns thereof, and Jeshanah with the towns thereof, and Ephrain with the towns thereof.

Bethel: It is just north of Jerusalem.

Jeshanah: Jeshan in Hebrew means old.

20 Neither did Jeroboam recover strength again in the days of Abijah: and the LORD struck him, and he died.

The LORD struck him, and he died: His son Nadab reigned.

21 But Abijah waxed mighty, and married fourteen wives, and begat twenty and two sons, and sixteen daughters. 22 And the rest of the acts of Abijah, and his ways, and his sayings, *are* written in the story of the prophet Iddo.

Chapter Fourteen

Asa reigns in Judah

1 So Abijah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David: and Asa his son reigned in his stead. In his days the land was quiet ten years. 2 And Asa did *that which was* good and right in the eyes of the LORD his God: 3 For he took away the altars of the strange *gods,* and the high places, and brake down the images, and cut down the groves: 4 And commanded Judah to seek the LORD God of their fathers, and to do the law and the commandment. 5 Also he took away out of all the cities of Judah the high places and the images: and the kingdom was quiet before him.

The land was quiet ten years: It didn’t have any wars, because Asa was a good king.

He took away the high places: This was a reason for the kingdom to be at rest. God protected them when they got rid of the pagan places of worship.

6 And he built fenced cities in Judah: for the land had rest, and he had no war in those years; because the LORD had given him rest. 7 Therefore he said unto Judah,

“Let us build these cities, and make about *them* walls, and towers, gates, and bars, *while* the land *is* yet before us; because we have sought the LORD our God, we have sought *him,* and he hath given us rest on every side. So they built and prospered.”

8 And Asa had an army *of men* that bare targets and spears, out of Judah three hundred thousand; and out of Benjamin, that bare shields and drew bows, two hundred and fourscore thousand: all these *were* mighty men of valour.

Zerah the Ethiopian

9 And there came out against them Zerah the Ethiopian with an host of a thousand thousand, and three hundred chariots; and came unto Mareshah.

A thousand thousand: One million.

Mareshah: A city of Judah. See Joshua 15:44.

10 Then Asa went out against him, and they set the battle in array in the valley of Zephathah at Mareshah. 11 And Asa cried unto the LORD his God, and said,

“LORD, *it is* nothing with thee to help, whether with many, or with them that have no power: help us, O LORD our God; for we rest on thee, and in thy name we go against this multitude. O LORD, thou *art* our God; let not man prevail against thee.”

The valley of Zephathah: It was at Mareshah. See Judges 1:17.

12 So the LORD smote the Ethiopians before Asa, and before Judah; and the Ethiopians fled. 13 And Asa and the people that *were* with him pursued them unto Gerar: and the Ethiopians were overthrown, that they could not recover themselves; for they were destroyed before the LORD, and before his host; and they carried away very much spoil. 14 And they smote all the cities round about Gerar; for the fear of the LORD came upon them: and they spoiled all the cities; for there was exceeding much spoil in them. 15 They smote also the tents of cattle, and carried away sheep and camels in abundance, and returned to Jerusalem.

Chapter Fifteen

The Spirit of God came upon Azariah

1 And the Spirit of God came upon Azariah the son of Oded: 2 And he went out to meet Asa, and said unto him,

The Spirit of God came upon Azariah: God spoke to Asa through Azariah. This does not happen to people today in the dispensation of grace.

“Hear ye me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin; The LORD *is* with you, while ye be with him; and if ye seek him, he will be found of you; but if ye forsake him, he will forsake you. 3 Now for a long season Israel *hath been* without the true God, and without a teaching priest, and without law. 4 But when they in their trouble did turn unto the LORD God of Israel, and sought him, he was found of them. 5 And in those times *there was* no peace to him that went out, nor to him that came in, but great vexations *were* upon all the inhabitants of the countries. 6 And nation was destroyed of nation, and city of city: for God did vex them with all adversity. 7 Be ye strong therefore, and let not your hands be weak: for your work shall be rewarded.”

8 And when Asa heard these words, and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage, and put away the abominable idols out of all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and out of the cities which he had taken from mount Ephraim, and renewed the altar of the LORD, that *was* before the porch of the LORD.

Ephraim and Manasseh and Simeon

9 And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and the strangers with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh, and out of Simeon: for they fell to him out of Israel in abundance, when they saw that the LORD his God *was* with him. 10 So they gathered themselves together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of the reign of Asa. 11 And they offered unto the LORD the same time, of the spoil *which* they had brought, seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep.

The strangers with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh, and out of Simeon: The Gentiles were called strangers but many of the members of the northern tribes that love the LORD came and place themselves under the nation of Judah.

A covenant

12 And they entered into a covenant to seek the LORD God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul; 13 That whosoever would not seek the LORD God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman.

Should be put to death: Whoever did not seek the LORD in Judah would be put to death at that time in their history.

 If you think about Israel’s unique role in God’s future kingdom you will start to begin to understand this verse. It is the eternal soul that is in focus here. Not some form of religious cleansing.

14 And they sware unto the LORD with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with trumpets, and with cornets. 15 And all Judah rejoiced at the oath: for they had sworn with all their heart, and sought him with their whole desire; and he was found of them: and the LORD gave them rest round about.

And the LORD gave them rest round about: The LORD blessed this covenant even though it may sound very foreign to us today.

 We are not under a covenant today we are under grace. We are not Israel who has a role in being a kingdom of priests in the future, we are the body of Christ with a heavenly destiny.

 We cannot compare ourselves, nor should be act like Israel under the law of Moses. We are not spiritual Israel today. We are under grace. See Romans 6:14-15 and Ephesians 3:1-6.

Maachah

16 And also *concerning* Maachah the mother of Asa the king, he removed her from *being* queen, because she had made an idol in a grove: and Asa cut down her idol, and stamped *it,* and burnt *it* at the brook Kidron.

Maachah: The name of the king of Gath, and Absalom’s mother and daughter. See 1st Kings 2:39.

17 But the high places were not taken away out of Israel: nevertheless the heart of Asa was perfect all his days. 18 And he brought into the house of God the things that his father had dedicated, and that he himself had dedicated, silver, and gold, and vessels. 19 And there was no *more* war unto the five and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa.

But the high places were not taken away out of Israel: This was said of most of Judah’s kings, not all.

 As a king in Judah drew closer to the LORD in keeping the covenant they had made with the LORD, the more peace they would have from their enemies, and the more victories they would have over their enemies.

Chapter Sixteen

Ramah is built

1 In the six and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa Baasha king of Israel came up against Judah, and built Ramah, to the intent that he might let none go out or come in to Asa king of Judah.

To the intent: Baasha did not want his people going to Jerusalem to worship because they would become loyal to Judah in the south.

And he built Ramah: He built up Ramah as an outpost to stop his own people from going to Jerusalem to worship the LORD.

2 Then Asa brought out silver and gold out of the treasures of the house of the LORD and of the king's house, and sent to Benhadad king of Syria, that dwelt at Damascus, saying,

3 *There is* a league between me and thee, as *there was* between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent thee silver and gold; go, break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me.

4 And Benhadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of his armies against the cities of Israel; and they smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abelmaim, and all the store cities of Naphtali. 5 And it came to pass, when Baasha heard *it,* that he left off building of Ramah, and let his work cease. See 1st Kings 15:16-22.

The stones and timber of Ramah

6 Then Asa the king took all Judah; and they carried away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof, wherewith Baasha was building; and he built therewith Geba and Mizpah. 7 And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah, and said unto him,

Geba and Mizpah: Cities near each other in the area belonging to the tribe of Benjamin.

Hanani the seer: See 1st Kings 16:1, 7, 2nd Chronicles 19:2, and 20:34.

“Because thou hast relied on the king of Syria, and not relied on the LORD thy God, therefore is the host of the king of Syria escaped out of thine hand. 8 Were not the Ethiopians and the Lubims a huge host, with very many chariots and horsemen? yet, because thou didst rely on the LORD, he delivered them into thine hand. 9 For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to shew himself strong in the behalf of *them* whose heart *is* perfect toward him. Herein thou hast done foolishly: therefore from henceforth thou shalt have wars.”

The eyes of the LORD run to and fro: See Zechariah 4:10.

Asa’s wrath

10 Then Asa was wroth with the seer, and put him in a prison house; for *he was* in a rage with him because of this *thing.* And Asa oppressed *some* of the people the same time.

Asa was wroth: His wrath was really at the LORD. Asa did a great job as king, but he got too big for his own good in the end and he did not finish his life as he had started it.

11 And, behold, the acts of Asa, first and last, lo, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. 12 And Asa in the thirty and ninth year of his reign was diseased in his feet, until his disease *was* exceeding *great:* yet in his disease he sought not to the LORD, but to the physicians.

He sought not to the LORD: This implies that had he sought the LORD that he would have been healed. You are not guaranteed healing today because you pray today.

13 And Asa slept with his fathers, and died in the one and fortieth year of his reign. 14 And they buried him in his own sepulchres, which he had made for himself in the city of David, and laid him in the bed which was filled with sweet odours and divers kinds *of spices* prepared by the apothecaries' art: and they made a very great burning for him.

They buried him in his own sepulchres which he had made for himself: He didn’t want to be buried in the sepulchres of the kings. He thought he deserved better.

The apothecaries: Those who made perfumes and incense.

Chapter Seventeen

Jehoshaphat’s reign

1 And Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead, and strengthened himself against Israel. 2 And he placed forces in all the fenced cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah, and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had taken.

The cities of Ephraim: The cities around. 2nd Chronicles 14:14 & 15:8.

3 And the LORD was with Jehoshaphat, because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and sought not unto Baalim; 4 But sought to the *LORD* God of his father, and walked in his commandments, and not after the doings of Israel. 5 Therefore the LORD stablished the kingdom in his hand; and all Judah brought to Jehoshaphat presents; and he had riches and honour in abundance. 6 And his heart was lifted up in the ways of the LORD: moreover he took away the high places and groves out of Judah.

Baalim: The name means strange gods (plural of Baal).

Moreover he took away the high places and groves out of Judah: This was not said of many of the kings of Judah.

Teachers sent out in Judah

7 Also in the third year of his reign he sent to his princes, *even* to Benhail, and to Obadiah, and to Zechariah, and to Nethaneel, and to Michaiah, to teach in the cities of Judah. 8 And with them *he sent* Levites, *even* Shemaiah, and Nethaniah, and Zebadiah, and Asahel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehonathan, and Adonijah, and Tobijah, and Tobadonijah, Levites; and with them Elishama and Jehoram, priests. 9 And they taught in Judah, and *had* the book of the law of the LORD with them, and went about throughout all the cities of Judah, and taught the people. 10 And the fear of the LORD fell upon all the kingdoms of the lands that *were* round about Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. 11 Also *some* of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat presents, and tribute silver; and the Arabians brought him flocks, seven thousand and seven hundred rams, and seven thousand and seven hundred he goats. 12 And Jehoshaphat waxed great exceedingly; and he built in Judah castles, and cities of store.

The book of the law: Genesis through Deuteronomy.

The fear of the LORD fell upon all the kingdoms: The LORD had put fear of him in the hearts of the kingdoms surrounding Judah to not make war with them at that time when Judah worshipped the LORD.

Mighty men of valour

13 And he had much business in the cities of Judah: and the men of war, mighty men of valour, *were* in Jerusalem. 14 And these *are* the numbers of them according to the house of their fathers:

Of Judah

Of Judah, the captains of thousands; Adnah the chief, and with him mighty men of valour three hundred thousand. 15 And next to him *was* Jehohanan the captain, and with him two hundred and fourscore thousand. 16 And next him *was* Amasiah the son of Zichri, who willingly offered himself unto the LORD; and with him two hundred thousand mighty men of valour.

Of Benjamin

17 And of Benjamin; Eliada a mighty man of valour, and with him armed men with bow and shield two hundred thousand. 18 And next him *was* Jehozabad, and with him an hundred and fourscore thousand ready prepared for the war. 19 These waited on the king, beside *those* whom the king put in the fenced cities throughout all Judah.

Chapter Eighteen

A prophet of the LORD

1 Now Jehoshaphat had riches and honour in abundance, and joined affinity with Ahab. 2 And after *certain* years he went down to Ahab to Samaria. And Ahab killed sheep and oxen for him in abundance, and for the people that *he had* with him, and persuaded him to go up *with him* to Ramothgilead. 3 And Ahab king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat king of Judah,

“Wilt thou go with me to Ramothgilead?”

And he answered him,

“I *am* as thou *art,* and my people as thy people; and *we will be* with thee in the war.”

4 And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel,

“Enquire, I pray thee, at the word of the LORD to day.”

5 Therefore the king of Israel gathered together of prophets four hundred men, and said unto them,

“Shall we go to Ramothgilead to battle, or shall I forbear?”

And they said,

“Go up; for God will deliver *it* into the king's hand.

Prophets four hundred men: These were prophets of Baal.

6 But Jehoshaphat said,

“*Is there* not here a prophet of the LORD besides, that we might enquire of him?”

7 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat,

“*There is* yet one man, by whom we may enquire of the LORD: but I hate him; for he never prophesied good unto me, but always evil: the same *is* Micaiah the son of Imla. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.”

Micaiah the son of Imla: See 1st Kings 22:8.

8 And the king of Israel called for one *of his* officers, and said,

“Fetch quickly Micaiah the son of Imla.”

9 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah sat either of them on his throne, clothed in *their* robes, and they sat in a void place at the entering in of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets prophesied before them. 10 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah had made him horns of iron, and said,

“Thus saith the LORD, With these thou shalt push Syria until they be consumed.”

11 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying,

“Go up to Ramothgilead, and prosper: for the LORD shall deliver *it* into the hand of the king.”

12 And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake to him, saying,

“Behold, the words of the prophets *declare* good to the king with one assent; let thy word therefore, I pray thee, be like one of theirs, and speak thou good.”

13 And Micaiah said,

“*As* the LORD liveth, even what my God saith, that will I speak.”

14 And when he was come to the king, the king said unto him,

“Micaiah, shall we go to Ramothgilead to battle, or shall I forbear?”

And he said,

“Go ye up, and prosper, and they shall be delivered into your hand.”

15 And the king said to him,

“How many times shall I adjure thee that thou say nothing but the truth to me in the name of the LORD?”

16 Then he said,

“I did see all Israel scattered upon the mountains, as sheep that have no shepherd: and the LORD said, These have no master; let them return *therefore* every man to his house in peace.”

17 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat,

“Did I not tell thee *that* he would not prophesy good unto me, but evil?”

18 Again he said,

“Therefore hear the word of the LORD; I saw the LORD sitting upon his throne, and all the host of heaven standing on his right hand and *on* his left.”

The host of heaven: The angelic host. 1st Kings 22:19.

“19 And the LORD said,”

“Who shall entice Ahab king of Israel, that he may go up and fall at Ramothgilead?”

“And one spake saying after this manner, and another saying after that manner. 20 Then there came out a spirit, and stood before the LORD, and said,”

“I will entice him.”

“And the LORD said unto him,”

“Wherewith?”

“21 And he said,”

I will go out, and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.”

“And *the LORD* said,”

“Thou shalt entice *him,* and thou shalt also prevail: go out, and do *even* so.”

A lying spirit: See 2nd Samuel 22:22.

“22 Now therefore, behold, the LORD hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of these thy prophets, and the LORD hath spoken evil against thee.”

23 Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near, and smote Micaiah upon the cheek, and said,

“Which way went the Spirit of the LORD from me to speak unto thee?”

 Zedekiah was mocking Micaiah, and he would regret it later when he hid from the LORD.

24 And Micaiah said,

“Behold, thou shalt see on that day when thou shalt go into an inner chamber to hide thyself.”

See 1st Kings 22:25.

25 Then the king of Israel said,

“Take ye Micaiah, and carry him back to Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son; 26 And say, Thus saith the king, Put this *fellow* in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I return in peace.”

The bread of affliction and with water of affliction: Unleavened bread. See Deuteronomy 16:3. See also 2nd Samuel 22:27.

27 And Micaiah said,

“If thou certainly return in peace, *then* hath not the LORD spoken by me.”

And he said,

“Hearken, all ye people.”

28 So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramothgilead. 29 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat,

“I will disguise myself, and will go to the battle; but put thou on thy robes.”

So the king of Israel disguised himself; and they went to the battle. 30 Now the king of Syria had commanded the captains of the chariots that *were* with him, saying,

“Fight ye not with small or great, save only with the king of Israel.”

31 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said,

“It *is* the king of Israel.”

Therefore they compassed about him to fight: but Jehoshaphat cried out, and the LORD helped him; and God moved them *to depart* from him. 32 For it came to pass, that, when the captains of the chariots perceived that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back again from pursuing him. 33 And a *certain* man drew a bow at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between the joints of the harness: therefore he said to his chariot man,

“Turn thine hand, that thou mayest carry me out of the host; for I am wounded.”

At a venture: By chance or luck.

34 And the battle increased that day: howbeit the king of Israel stayed *himself* up in *his* chariot against the Syrians until the even: and about the time of the sun going down he died.

 Ahab, the king of Israel died in battle by an angel guided arrow.

Chapter Nineteen

Jehu the son of Hanani the seer

1 And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah returned to his house in peace to Jerusalem. 2 And Jehu the son of Hanani the seer went out to meet him, and said to king Jehoshaphat,

“Shouldest thou help the ungodly, and love them that hate the LORD? therefore *is* wrath upon thee from before the LORD. 3 Nevertheless there are good things found in thee, in that thou hast taken away the groves out of the land, and hast prepared thine heart to seek God.”

Jehu the son of Hanani the seer: Prophets and seers are the same thing. A seer was an older term for prophets.

4 And Jehoshaphat dwelt at Jerusalem: and he went out again through the people from Beersheba to mount Ephraim, and brought them back unto the LORD God of their fathers. 5 And he set judges in the land throughout all the fenced cities of Judah, city by city, 6 And said to the judges,

“Take heed what ye do: for ye judge not for man, but for the LORD, who *is* with you in the judgment. 7 Wherefore now let the fear of the LORD be upon you; take heed and do *it:* for *there is* no iniquity with the LORD our God, nor respect of persons, nor taking of gifts.”

8 Moreover in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites, and *of* the priests, and of the chief of the fathers of Israel, for the judgment of the LORD, and for controversies, when they returned to Jerusalem. 9 And he charged them, saying,

“Thus shall ye do in the fear of the LORD, faithfully, and with a perfect heart. 10 And what cause soever shall come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, ye shall even warn them that they trespass not against the LORD, and *so* wrath come upon you, and upon your brethren: this do, and ye shall not trespass. 11 And, behold, Amariah the chief priest *is* over you in all matters of the LORD; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, for all the king's matters: also the Levites *shall be* officers before you. Deal courageously, and the LORD shall be with the good.”

Chapter Twenty

See the salvation of the LORD

1 It came to pass after this also, *that* the children of Moab, and the children of Ammon, and with them *other* beside the Ammonites, came against Jehoshaphat to battle. 2 Then there came some that told Jehoshaphat, saying,

“There cometh a great multitude against thee from beyond the sea on this side Syria; and, behold, they *be* in Hazazontamar, which *is* Engedi.”

Hazazontamar: The place called Engedi. See Genesis 14:7.

3 And Jehoshaphat feared, and set himself to seek the LORD, and proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah. 4 And Judah gathered themselves together, to ask *help* of the LORD: even out of all the cities of Judah they came to seek the LORD. 5 And Jehoshaphat stood in the congregation of Judah and Jerusalem, in the house of the LORD, before the new court, 6 And said,

“O LORD God of our fathers, *art* not thou God in heaven? and rulest *not* thou over all the kingdoms of the heathen? and in thine hand *is there not* power and might, so that none is able to withstand thee? 7 *Art* not thou our God, *who* didst drive out the inhabitants of this land before thy people Israel, and gavest it to the seed of Abraham thy friend for ever? 8 And they dwelt therein, and have built thee a sanctuary therein for thy name, saying, 9 If, *when* evil cometh upon us, *as* the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we stand before this house, and in thy presence, (for thy name *is* in this house,) and cry unto thee in our affliction, then thou wilt hear and help. 10 And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom thou wouldest not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned from them, and destroyed them not; 11 Behold, *I say, how* they reward us, to come to cast us out of thy possession, which thou hast given us to inherit. 12 O our God, wilt thou not judge them? for we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes *are* upon thee.”

13 And all Judah stood before the LORD, with their little ones, their wives, and their children. 14 Then upon Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite of the sons of Asaph, came the Spirit of the LORD in the midst of the congregation; 15 And he said,

“Hearken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the LORD unto you, Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle *is* not yours, but God's. 16 To morrow go ye down against them: behold, they come up by the cliff of Ziz; and ye shall find them at the end of the brook, before the wilderness of Jeruel. 17 Ye shall not *need* to fight in this *battle:* set yourselves, stand ye *still,* and see the salvation of the LORD with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: for the LORD *will be* with you.”

18 And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with *his* face to the ground: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before the LORD, worshipping the LORD. 19 And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites, and of the children of the Korhites, stood up to praise the LORD God of Israel with a loud voice on high. 20 And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said,

“Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; Believe in the LORD your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.”

The wilderness of Tekoa: See 1st Chronicles 11:16. A man named Tekoa built the city of Tekoa.

21 And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the LORD, and that should praise the beauty of holiness, as they went out before the army, and to say,

“Praise the LORD; for his mercy *endureth* for ever.”

22 And when they began to sing and to praise, the LORD set ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten. 23 For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy *them:* and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, every one helped to destroy another.

 After the inhabitants of Seir were destroyed by Ammon and Moab they turned on one another at the LORD’s leading until there was none left of either army.

24 And when Judah came toward the watch tower in the wilderness, they looked unto the multitude, and, behold, they *were* dead bodies fallen to the earth, and none escaped. 25 And when Jehoshaphat and his people came to take away the spoil of them, they found among them in abundance both riches with the dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves, more than they could carry away: and they were three days in gathering of the spoil, it was so much. 26 And on the fourth day they assembled themselves in the valley of Berachah; for there they blessed the LORD: therefore the name of the same place was called, The valley of Berachah, unto this day.

The valley of Berachah: Named the valley of blessing by Jehoshaphat. Between Jerusalem & Hebron.

27 Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; for the LORD had made them to rejoice over their enemies. 28 And they came to Jerusalem with psalteries and harps and trumpets unto the house of the LORD. 29 And the fear of God was on all the kingdoms of *those* countries, when they had heard that the LORD fought against the enemies of Israel.

The LORD fought against the enemies of Israel: By causing them to fight one another.

30 So the realm of Jehoshaphat was quiet: for his God gave him rest round about. 31 And Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah: *he was* thirty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Azubah the daughter of Shilhi. 32 And he walked in the way of Asa his father, and departed not from it, doing *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD.

The high places

33 Howbeit the high places were not taken away: for as yet the people had not prepared their hearts unto the God of their fathers.

The high places: Places on mountain tops were groves were built to worship nature.

34 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of Jehu the son of Hanani, who *is* mentioned in the book of the kings of Israel.

The book of Jehu: 1st and 2nd Kings.

Jehoshaphat and Ahaziah join together

2nd Samuel 22:48-52

35 And after this did Jehoshaphat king of Judah join himself with Ahaziah king of Israel, who did very wickedly: 36 And he joined himself with him to make ships to go to Tarshish: and they made the ships in Eziongeber.

Eziongeber: This is near modern-day Eilat (Eloth) in the city of Aqaba Jordan.

Tarshish: Is somewhere on the African coast.

37 Then Eliezer the son of Dodavah of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat, saying,

“Because thou hast joined thyself with Ahaziah, the LORD hath broken thy works.”

And the ships were broken, that they were not able to go to Tarshish.

Eliezer the son of Dodavah: This was not Moses’ son Eliezer.

Mareshah: A city belonging to Judah. See Joshua 15:44.

The ships were broken: Eliezer prophesied the ships that the two kings built together would be broken. Possibly by the winds in the high seas.

Chapter Twenty-one

Jehoram’s reign

1 Now Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And Jehoram his son reigned in his stead. 2 And he had brethren the sons of Jehoshaphat, Azariah, and Jehiel, and Zechariah, and Azariah, and Michael, and Shephatiah: all these *were* the sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel. 3 And their father gave them great gifts of silver, and of gold, and of precious things, with fenced cities in Judah: but the kingdom gave he to Jehoram; because he *was* the firstborn. 4 Now when Jehoram was risen up to the kingdom of his father, he strengthened himself, and slew all his brethren with the sword, and *divers* also of the princes of Israel.

He was the firstborn: Jehoram was the firstborn son of Jehoshaphat and intitled to be king by birthright, unless he died or disqualified himself.

Slew all his brethren: He actually killed his actual brothers and other close family members so they could not kill him and ascend to the throne.

5 Jehoram *was* thirty and two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. 6 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, like as did the house of Ahab: for he had the daughter of Ahab to wife: and he wrought *that which was* evil in the eyes of the LORD.

He had the daughter of Ahab to wife: Athaliah.

7 Howbeit the LORD would not destroy the house of David, because of the covenant that he had made with David, and as he promised to give a light to him and to his sons for ever.

The LORD would not destroy the house of David: He would not allow Jehoram to die because that would get rid of the lineage the LORD promised to protect.

The covenant that he had made with David: 2nd Samuel 7:12. The LORD would wait and raise Jehoram’s youngest son to serve him.

8 In his days the Edomites revolted from under the dominion of Judah, and made themselves a king. 9 Then Jehoram went forth with his princes, and all his chariots with him: and he rose up by night, and smote the Edomites which compassed him in, and the captains of the chariots.

Edomites: The people of Edom. Descendants of Lot.

10 So the Edomites revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day. The same time *also* did Libnah revolt from under his hand; because he had forsaken the LORD God of his fathers. 11 Moreover he made high places in the mountains of Judah, and caused the inhabitants of Jerusalem to commit fornication, and compelled Judah *thereto.*

Libnah: The place where Jeremiah was from near Hebron.

Elijah’s prophecy

12 And there came a writing to him from Elijah the prophet, saying,

“Thus saith the LORD God of David thy father, Because thou hast not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat thy father, nor in the ways of Asa king of Judah, 13 But hast walked in the way of the kings of Israel, and hast made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to go a whoring, like to the whoredoms of the house of Ahab, and also hast slain thy brethren of thy father's house, *which were* better than thyself: 14 Behold, with a great plague will the LORD smite thy people, and thy children, and thy wives, and all thy goods: 15 And thou *shalt have* great sickness by disease of thy bowels, until thy bowels fall out by reason of the sickness day by day. 16 Moreover the LORD stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines, and of the Arabians, that *were* near the Ethiopians: 17 And they came up into Judah, and brake into it, and carried away all the substance that was found in the king's house, and his sons also, and his wives; so that there was never a son left him, save Jehoahaz, the youngest of his sons.”

18 And after all this the LORD smote him in his bowels with an incurable disease. 19 And it came to pass, that in process of time, after the end of two years, his bowels fell out by reason of his sickness: so he died of sore diseases. And his people made no burning for him, like the burning of his fathers. 20 Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years, and departed without being desired. Howbeit they buried him in the city of David, but not in the sepulchres of the kings.

His bowels fell out: His large intestines came out from an illness.

His people made no burning for him like the burning of his fathers: King Asa had a very great burning (Cremation). See 2nd Chronicles 16:14.

And departed without being desired: The people were glad he was dead.

Chapter Twenty-two

Ahaziah’s reign

1 And the inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah his youngest son king in his stead: for the band of men that came with the Arabians to the camp had slain all the eldest. So Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah reigned. 2 Forty and two years old *was* Ahaziah when he began to reign, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Athaliah the daughter of Omri.

Athalia: The daughter of Omri. King Omri of Ahab in the kingdom of Israel.

3 He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab: for his mother was his counsellor to do wickedly. 4 Wherefore he did evil in the sight of the LORD like the house of Ahab: for they were his counsellors after the death of his father to his destruction. 5 He walked also after their counsel, and went with Jehoram the son of Ahab king of Israel to war against Hazael king of Syria at Ramothgilead: and the Syrians smote Joram. 6 And he returned to be healed in Jezreel because of the wounds which were given him at Ramah, when he fought with Hazael king of Syria. And Azariah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab at Jezreel, because he was sick. 7 And the destruction of Ahaziah was of God by coming to Joram: for when he was come, he went out with Jehoram against Jehu the son of Nimshi, whom the LORD had anointed to cut off the house of Ahab.

Ramothgilead: One of the six cities of refuge. It was located on the east side of the Jordan in the land allotted to the tribe of Gad.

Jezreel: A city in the Jezreel valley in northern Israel.

Jehu the son of Nimshi: See 2nd Kings 9:6-10.

8 And it came to pass, that, when Jehu was executing judgment upon the house of Ahab, and found the princes of Judah, and the sons of the brethren of Ahaziah, that ministered to Ahaziah, he slew them. 9 And he sought Ahaziah: and they caught him, (for he was hid in Samaria,) and brought him to Jehu: and when they had slain him, they buried him:

“Because, said they, he *is* the son of Jehoshaphat, who sought the LORD with all his heart.”

The killer granny

So the house of Ahaziah had no power to keep still the kingdom. 10 But when Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal of the house of Judah.

The house of Ahaziah had no power to keep still the kingdom: There was no one left to keep the kingdom in their families control except for Joash who would serve the LORD.

The seed royal: Athaliah had all the kings sons killed (not her own children) so that she could reign as queen, with the exception of Joash the youngest.

Athaliah reigned over the land

11 But Jehoshabeath, the daughter of the king, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons that were slain, and put him and his nurse in a bedchamber. So Jehoshabeath, the daughter of king Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest, (for she was the sister of Ahaziah,) hid him from Athaliah, so that she slew him not. 12 And he was with them hid in the house of God six years: and Athaliah reigned over the land.

 Athalia reigned for six years as the queen of Judah. No king reigned at this time in Judah. This was the only time a queen reigned in Judah.

Hid in the house of God six years: Athaliah did not know about Joash being hidden in the temple.

Chapter Twenty-three

Jehoiada strengthened himself

1 And in the seventh year Jehoiada strengthened himself, and took the captains of hundreds, Azariah the son of Jeroham, and Ishmael the son of Jehohanan, and Azariah the son of Obed, and Maaseiah the son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat the son of Zichri, into covenant with him. 2 And they went about in Judah, and gathered the Levites out of all the cities of Judah, and the chief of the fathers of Israel, and they came to Jerusalem. 3 And all the congregation made a covenant with the king in the house of God. And he said unto them,

“Behold, the king's son shall reign, as the LORD hath said of the sons of David. 4 This *is* the thing that ye shall do; A third part of you entering on the sabbath, of the priests and of the Levites, *shall be* porters of the doors; 5 And a third part *shall be* at the king's house; and a third part at the gate of the foundation: and all the people *shall be* in the courts of the house of the LORD. 6 But let none come into the house of the LORD, save the priests, and they that minister of the Levites; they shall go in, for they *are* holy: but all the people shall keep the watch of the LORD. 7 And the Levites shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand; and whosoever *else* cometh into the house, he shall be put to death: but be ye with the king when he cometh in, and when he goeth out.”

The king’s son shall reign as the LORD hath said of the sons of David: 2nd Samuel 7:12.

The Levites shall compass the king: The Levites (priests) became the kings body guards so queen Athaliah wouldn’t be able to kill him.

8 So the Levites and all Judah did according to all things that Jehoiada the priest had commanded, and took every man his men that were to come in on the sabbath, with them that were to go *out* on the sabbath: for Jehoiada the priest dismissed not the courses.

The sabbath: Friday evening at sunset until the end of the day on Saturday.

9 Moreover Jehoiada the priest delivered to the captains of hundreds spears, and bucklers, and shields, that *had been* king David's, which *were* in the house of God. 10 And he set all the people, every man having his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side of the temple, along by the altar and the temple, by the king round about. 11 Then they brought out the king's son, and put upon him the crown, and *gave him* the testimony, and made him king. And Jehoiada and his sons anointed him, and said,

“God save the king.”

The testimony: The two tables of Moses that were in the ark. See Exodus 16:34 and 25:15.

Anointed him: The priest poured oil on him setting him apart to be Israel’s king.

12 Now when Athaliah heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people into the house of the LORD: 13 And she looked, and, behold, the king stood at his pillar at the entering in, and the princes and the trumpets by the king: and all the people of the land rejoiced, and sounded with trumpets, also the singers with instruments of musick, and such as taught to sing praise. Then Athaliah rent her clothes, and said,

“Treason, Treason.”

14 Then Jehoiada the priest brought out the captains of hundreds that were set over the host, and said unto them,

“Have her forth of the ranges: and whoso followeth her, let him be slain with the sword.”

For the priest said,

“Slay her not in the house of the LORD.”

Have her forth of the ranges: Get her out of the temple area.

15 So they laid hands on her; and when she was come to the entering of the horse gate by the king's house, they slew her there.

The LORD’S people

16 And Jehoiada made a covenant between him, and between all the people, and between the king, that they should be the LORD'S people.

The LORD’S people: The people of Jehovah.

17 Then all the people went to the house of Baal, and brake it down, and brake his altars and his images in pieces, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. 18 Also Jehoiada appointed the offices of the house of the LORD by the hand of the priests the Levites, whom David had distributed in the house of the LORD, to offer the burnt offerings of the LORD, as *it is* written in the law of Moses, with rejoicing and with singing, *as it was ordained* by David. 19 And he set the porters at the gates of the house of the LORD, that none *which was* unclean in any thing should enter in.

The house of Baal: The temple of Baal erected by Ahab.

Unclean: Not ritually cleansed to offer a sacrifice. Gentiles were unclean as well.

20 And he took the captains of hundreds, and the nobles, and the governors of the people, and all the people of the land, and brought down the king from the house of the LORD: and they came through the high gate into the king's house, and set the king upon the throne of the kingdom. 21 And all the people of the land rejoiced: and the city was quiet, after that they had slain Athaliah with the sword.

Chapter Twenty-four

Joash’s reign

1 Joash *was* seven years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Zibiah of Beersheba. 2 And Joash did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD all the days of Jehoiada the priest.

His mother’s name was Zibiah of Beersheba: Her name is given because kings often had children from more than one of their wives.

3 And Jehoiada took for him two wives; and he begat sons and daughters. 4 And it came to pass after this, *that* Joash was minded to repair the house of the LORD. 5 And he gathered together the priests and the Levites, and said to them,

“Go out unto the cities of Judah, and gather of all Israel money to repair the house of your God from year to year, and see that ye hasten the matter.”

Jehoiada took for him two wives: This was under the law of Moses, not in the dispensation of grace. In Paul’s epistles to Timothy a Pastor must be the husband of one wife.

 A marriage to more than one wife under Israel’s law program was permitted because Israel was to be an innumerable multitude of people that would be a kingdom of priests.

 We do not have the office of a priest today in the body of Christ. We will not inherit the earth, Israel will.

Howbeit the Levites hastened *it* not. 6 And the king called for Jehoiada the chief, and said unto him,

“Why hast thou not required of the Levites to bring in out of Judah and out of Jerusalem the collection, *according to the commandment* of Moses the servant of the LORD, and of the congregation of Israel, for the tabernacle of witness?”

7 For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the house of God; and also all the dedicated things of the house of the LORD did they bestow upon Baalim. 8 And at the king's commandment they made a chest, and set it without at the gate of the house of the LORD. 9 And they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, to bring in to the LORD the collection *that* Moses the servant of God *laid* upon Israel in the wilderness.

Baalim: The name means strange gods (plural of Baal).

The collection: A freewill offering. See Exodus 12:12-16.

10 And all the princes and all the people rejoiced, and brought in, and cast into the chest, until they had made an end. 11 Now it came to pass, that at what time the chest was brought unto the king's office by the hand of the Levites, and when they saw that *there was* much money, the king's scribe and the high priest's officer came and emptied the chest, and took it, and carried it to his place again. Thus they did day by day, and gathered money in abundance. 12 And the king and Jehoiada gave it to such as did the work of the service of the house of the LORD, and hired masons and carpenters to repair the house of the LORD, and also such as wrought iron and brass to mend the house of the LORD. 13 So the workmen wrought, and the work was perfected by them, and they set the house of God in his state, and strengthened it.

The work was perfected by them: The work was completed by them. The word perfected means a finished thing.

14 And when they had finished *it,* they brought the rest of the money before the king and Jehoiada, whereof were made vessels for the house of the LORD, *even* vessels to minister, and to offer *withal,* and spoons, and vessels of gold and silver. And they offered burnt offerings in the house of the LORD continually all the days of Jehoiada. 15 But Jehoiada waxed old, and was full of days when he died; an hundred and thirty years old *was he* when he died. 16 And they buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, both toward God, and toward his house.

An hundred and thirty years old when he died: This age was not uncommon in those days.

The princes of Judah

17 Now after the death of Jehoiada came the princes of Judah, and made obeisance to the king. Then the king hearkened unto them. 18 And they left the house of the LORD God of their fathers, and served groves and idols: and wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem for this their trespass. 19 Yet he sent prophets to them, to bring them again unto the LORD; and they testified against them: but they would not give ear.

They left the house of the LORD: The leaders (princes of Judah) worshipped pagan gods in the groves.

The wrath came upon them, to bring them again unto the LORD: Under Israel’s law covenant if they did not keep the law then God would chastise them to bring them back to them.

 God does not do that today to the body of Christ. We are not Israel under the law.

They would not give ear: They would not listen to the prophets.

Zechariah the prophet

20 And the Spirit of God came upon Zechariah the son of Jehoiada the priest, which stood above the people, and said unto them,

“Thus saith God, Why transgress ye the commandments of the LORD, that ye cannot prosper? because ye have forsaken the LORD, he hath also forsaken you.”

Zechariah dies

21 And they conspired against him, and stoned him with stones at the commandment of the king in the court of the house of the LORD. 22 Thus Joash the king remembered not the kindness which Jehoiada his father had done to him, but slew his son. And when he died, he said,

“The LORD look upon *it,* and require *it.*”

Syria invades Judah

23 And it came to pass at the end of the year, *that* the host of Syria came up against him: and they came to Judah and Jerusalem, and destroyed all the princes of the people from among the people, and sent all the spoil of them unto the king of Damascus. 24 For the army of the Syrians came with a small company of men, and the LORD delivered a very great host into their hand, because they had forsaken the LORD God of their fathers. So they executed judgment against Joash. 25 And when they were departed from him, (for they left him in great diseases,) his own servants conspired against him for the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and slew him on his bed, and he died: and they buried him in the city of David, but they buried him not in the sepulchres of the kings.

A small company of men, and the LORD delivered a very great host: The tables would turn against Judah when she would turn against the LORD.

 If she served the LORD God would fight her battles for her and she would win against all odds, but if she didn’t serve the LORD then he would fight against them and defeat them with a small army.

Joash dies

26 And these are they that conspired against him; Zabad the son of Shimeath an Ammonitess, and Jehozabad the son of Shimrith a Moabitess. 27 Now *concerning* his sons, and the greatness of the burdens *laid* upon him, and the repairing of the house of God, behold, they *are* written in the story of the book of the kings. And Amaziah his son reigned in his stead.

Chapter Twenty-five

Amaziah reigns

1 Amaziah *was* twenty and five years old *when* he began to reign, and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Jehoaddan of Jerusalem. 2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, but not with a perfect heart.

But not with a perfect heart: Not with his whole heart. Hezekiah served the LORD with a perfect heart. 2nd Chronicles 20:3. David implored Solomon to serve the LORD with a perfect heart (wholeheartedly).

3 Now it came to pass, when the kingdom was established to him, that he slew his servants that had killed the king his father. 4 But he slew not their children, but *did* as *it is* written in the law in the book of Moses, where the LORD commanded, saying,

“The fathers shall not die for the children, neither shall the children die for the fathers, but every man shall die for his own sin.”

See Deuteronomy 24:16

5 Moreover Amaziah gathered Judah together, and made them captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds, according to the houses of *their* fathers, throughout all Judah and Benjamin: and he numbered them from twenty years old and above, and found them three hundred thousand choice *men, able* to go forth to war, that could handle spear and shield. 6 He hired also an hundred thousand mighty men of valour out of Israel for an hundred talents of silver. 7 But there came a man of God to him, saying,

“O king, let not the army of Israel go with thee; for the LORD *is* not with Israel, *to wit, with* all the children of Ephraim. 8 But if thou wilt go, do *it,* be strong for the battle: God shall make thee fall before the enemy: for God hath power to help, and to cast down.”

A man of God: A prophet. We in the body of Christ are in no way similar to the prophets of Israel (Men of God). We are not God’s anointed as many claim.

9 And Amaziah said to the man of God,

“But what shall we do for the hundred talents which I have given to the army of Israel?”

And the man of God answered,

“The LORD is able to give thee much more than this.”

10 Then Amaziah separated them, *to wit,* the army that was come to him out of Ephraim, to go home again: wherefore their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in great anger.

To wit: More specifically, or to be precise.

Their anger was greatly kindled: Greatly inflamed.

11 And Amaziah strengthened himself, and led forth his people, and went to the valley of salt, and smote of the children of Seir ten thousand.

The valley of salt: The area near the dead sea.

The children of Seir: The people that lived on mount Seir.

12 And *other* ten thousand *left* alive did the children of Judah carry away captive, and brought them unto the top of the rock, and cast them down from the top of the rock, that they all were broken in pieces.

And cast them down: They threw them off the cliff. Why? They could have killed them by the sword in the battle, but they didn’t. Either way they died.

 Should modern armies do this today? Absolutely not! Almost all armies in those days did. If they didn’t kill their enemies, they came back and killed them later.

 God’s reasons for Israel killing their enemies was not for the same reasons as all the other nations reasons. God did not want Israel given completely over to idolatry because they were his chosen nation to become a kingdom of priests to reach all the Gentile world.

13 But the soldiers of the army which Amaziah sent back, that they should not go with him to battle, fell upon the cities of Judah, from Samaria even unto Bethhoron, and smote three thousand of them, and took much spoil.

 Why these men wanted to kill three thousand men of Judah after having been paid for a battle they never had to fight doesn’t make any sense.

14 Now it came to pass, after that Amaziah was come from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the children of Seir, and set them up *to be* his gods, and bowed down himself before them, and burned incense unto them.

The gods of the children of Seir: The people around Mt. Seir were the descendants of Esau, called the Edomites. They worshipped Molech.

 Why would he worship the false gods of the people he just defeated? He in verse nine believed the man of God concerning the LORD helping him. He was very fickle.

15 Wherefore the anger of the LORD was kindled against Amaziah, and he sent unto him a prophet, which said unto him,

“Why hast thou sought after the gods of the people, which could not deliver their own people out of thine hand?”

16 And it came to pass, as he talked with him, that *the king* said unto him,

“Art thou made of the king's counsel? forbear; why shouldest thou be smitten?”

Forbear: To refrain from doing something.

Then the prophet forbare, and said,

“I know that God hath determined to destroy thee, because thou hast done this, and hast not hearkened unto my counsel.”

17 Then Amaziah king of Judah took advice, and sent to Joash, the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying,

“Come, let us see one another in the face.”

18 And Joash king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying,

“The thistle that *was* in Lebanon sent to the cedar that *was* in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife: and there passed by a wild beast that *was* in Lebanon, and trode down the thistle. 19 Thou sayest, Lo, thou hast smitten the Edomites; and thine heart lifteth thee up to boast: abide now at home; why shouldest thou meddle to *thine* hurt, that thou shouldest fall, *even* thou, and Judah with thee?”

20 But Amaziah would not hear; for it *came* of God, that he might deliver them into the hand *of their enemies,* because they sought after the gods of Edom. 21 So Joash the king of Israel went up; and they saw one another in the face, *both* he and Amaziah king of Judah, at Bethshemesh, which *belongeth* to Judah. 22 And Judah was put to the worse before Israel, and they fled every man to his tent.

For it came of God: God didn’t want Amaziah to listen to Joash because he wanted him to die for his worshipping their false gods.

Bethshemesh: The name means the house of the Sun.

Judah was put to the worse: They were losing badly.

23 And Joash the king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz, at Bethshemesh, and brought him to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim to the corner gate, four hundred cubits. 24 And *he took* all the gold and the silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of God with Obededom, and the treasures of the king's house, the hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

The gate of Ephraim: Nehemiah 8:16 & 12:39.

The corner gate: See Zechariah 14:10.

Obededom: Where the ark dwelt when David first became king. See 2nd Samuel 6:10.

The hostages also: See 2nd Kings 14:14.

25 And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Joash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years. 26 Now the rest of the acts of Amaziah, first and last, behold, *are* they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?

Amaziah’s death

27 Now after the time that Amaziah did turn away from following the LORD they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish: but they sent to Lachish after him, and slew him there. 28 And they brought him upon horses, and buried him with his fathers in the city of Judah.

 They made a conspiracy against him: The they are possibly the religious that often would kill their own king if he turned from LORD and then hope the heir would serve the LORD.

Lachish: A city 20 kilometers west of Jerusalem where the Amorites once lived.

Chapter Twenty-six

Uzziah’s reign

1 Then all the people of Judah took Uzziah, who *was* sixteen years old, and made him king in the room of his father Amaziah. 2 He built Eloth, and restored it to Judah, after that the king slept with his fathers.

Eloth: Modern day Eilat. The southern tip of Israel at the Red sea.

3 Sixteen years old *was* Uzziah when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Jecoliah of Jerusalem. 4 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, according to all that his father Amaziah did. 5 And he sought God in the days of Zechariah, who had understanding in the visions of God: and as long as he sought the LORD, God made him to prosper.

He sought God in the days of Zechariah: He was dependent upon Zechariah to keep him right with the LORD.

 Seeking the LORD God of Israel under the law covenant brought financial and military success to Israel as promised by him. The body of Christ today is not under any covenant, we are under grace. See Romans 6:14-15.

6 And he went forth and warred against the Philistines, and brake down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod, and built cities about Ashdod, and among the Philistines. 7 And God helped him against the Philistines, and against the Arabians that dwelt in Gurbaal, and the Mehunims. 8 And the Ammonites gave gifts to Uzziah: and his name spread abroad *even* to the entering in of Egypt; for he strengthened *himself* exceedingly.

The Mehunims: People from Moan (Meunim) See Nehemiah 7:52.

9 Moreover Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the corner gate, and at the valley gate, and at the turning *of the wall,* and fortified them. 10 Also he built towers in the desert, and digged many wells: for he had much cattle, both in the low country, and in the plains: husbandmen *also,* and vine dressers in the mountains, and in Carmel: for he loved husbandry.

Husbandry: Farming.

11 Moreover Uzziah had an host of fighting men, that went out to war by bands, according to the number of their account by the hand of Jeiel the scribe and Maaseiah the ruler, under the hand of Hananiah, *one* of the king's captains. 12 The whole number of the chief of the fathers of the mighty men of valour *were* two thousand and six hundred. 13 And under their hand *was* an army, three hundred thousand and seven thousand and five hundred, that made war with mighty power, to help the king against the enemy. 14 And Uzziah prepared for them throughout all the host shields, and spears, and helmets, and habergeons, and bows, and slings *to cast* stones.

Habergeons: Coats of mail for battling in.

15 And he made in Jerusalem engines, invented by cunning men, to be on the towers and upon the bulwarks, to shoot arrows and great stones withal.

Engines: Catapults and giant crossbows.

And his name spread far abroad; for he was marvellously helped, till he was strong.

Uzziah transgressed against the LORD

16 But when he was strong, his heart was lifted up to *his* destruction: for he transgressed against the LORD his God, and went into the temple of the LORD to burn incense upon the altar of incense. 17 And Azariah the priest went in after him, and with him fourscore priests of the LORD, *that were* valiant men: 18 And they withstood Uzziah the king, and said unto him,

“*It appertaineth* not unto thee, Uzziah, to burn incense unto the LORD, but to the priests the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense: go out of the sanctuary; for thou hast trespassed; neither *shall it be* for thine honour from the LORD God.”

The leprosy even rose up

19 Then Uzziah was wroth, and *had* a censer in his hand to burn incense: and while he was wroth with the priests, the leprosy even rose up in his forehead before the priests in the house of the LORD, from beside the incense altar. 20 And Azariah the chief priest, and all the priests, looked upon him, and, behold, he *was* leprous in his forehead, and they thrust him out from thence; yea, himself hasted also to go out, because the LORD had smitten him. 21 And Uzziah the king was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a several house, *being* a leper; for he was cut off from the house of the LORD: and Jotham his son *was* over the king's house, judging the people of the land.

In a several house: A leper colony.

Cut off from the house of the LORD: No leper could come inside the city let alone the temple area because they were unclean.

22 Now the rest of the acts of Uzziah, first and last, did Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, write. See Isaiah 16:1.

23 So Uzziah slept with his fathers, and they buried him with his fathers in the field of the burial which *belonged* to the kings; for they said,

“He *is* a leper:”

and Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

Chapter Twenty-seven

Jotham’s reign

1 Jotham *was* twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also *was* Jerushah, the daughter of Zadok. 2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, according to all that his father Uzziah did: howbeit he entered not into the temple of the LORD. And the people did yet corruptly. 3 He built the high gate of the house of the LORD, and on the wall of Ophel he built much.

The wall of Ophel: Near the fish gate in the city of Jerusalem. See 2nd Chronicles 33:14.

And the people did yet corruptly

4 Moreover he built cities in the mountains of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers. 5 He fought also with the king of the Ammonites, and prevailed against them. And the children of Ammon gave him the same year an hundred talents of silver, and ten thousand measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley. So much did the children of Ammon pay unto him, both the second year, and the third. 6 So Jotham became mighty, because he prepared his ways before the LORD his God. 7 Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all his wars, and his ways, lo, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah. 8 He was five and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. 9 And Jotham slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David: and Ahaz his son reigned in his stead.

Chapter Twenty-eight

Ahaz’s reign of destruction

1 Ahaz *was* twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: but he did not *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, like David his father: 2 For he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and made also molten images for Baalim.

Molten images: Idols made of iron.

Baalim: The name means strange gods (plural of Baal).

3 Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, after the abominations of the heathen whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. 4 He sacrificed also and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree. 5 Wherefore the LORD his God delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him, and carried away a great multitude of them captives, and brought *them* to Damascus. And he was also delivered into the hand of the king of Israel, who smote him with a great slaughter.

The valley of the son of Hinnom: The valley just to the south of the city walls of Jerusalem.

And burnt his children in the fire: He offered him as a sacrifice to a pagan idol.

Captives: This was not the Babylonian captivity that happens many years later.

Who smote him with a great slaughter: Defeated him in battle.

6 For Pekah the son of Remaliah slew in Judah an hundred and twenty thousand in one day, *which were* all valiant men; because they had forsaken the LORD God of their fathers. 7 And Zichri, a mighty man of Ephraim, slew Maaseiah the king's son, and Azrikam the governor of the house, and Elkanah *that was* next to the king. 8 And the children of Israel carried away captive of their brethren two hundred thousand, women, sons, and daughters, and took also away much spoil from them, and brought the spoil to Samaria.

The prophet Oded

9 But a prophet of the LORD was there, whose name *was* Oded: and he went out before the host that came to Samaria, and said unto them,

“Behold, because the LORD God of your fathers was wroth with Judah, he hath delivered them into your hand, and ye have slain them in a rage *that* reacheth up unto heaven. 10 And now ye purpose to keep under the children of Judah and Jerusalem for bondmen and bondwomen unto you: *but are there* not with you, even with you, sins against the LORD your God? 11 Now hear me therefore, and deliver the captives again, which ye have taken captive of your brethren: for the fierce wrath of the LORD *is* upon you.”

12 Then certain of the heads of the children of Ephraim, Azariah the son of Johanan, Berechiah the son of Meshillemoth, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai, stood up against them that came from the war, 13 And said unto them,

“Ye shall not bring in the captives hither: for whereas we have offended against the LORD *already,* ye intend to add *more* to our sins and to our trespass: for our trespass is great, and *there is* fierce wrath against Israel.”

A rage that reacheth up to heaven: Israel’s sin of taking the nation of Judah’s wives and children as captives angered the LORD.

14 So the armed men left the captives and the spoil before the princes and all the congregation. 15 And the men which were expressed by name rose up, and took the captives, and with the spoil clothed all that were naked among them, and arrayed them, and shod them, and gave them to eat and to drink, and anointed them, and carried all the feeble of them upon asses, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palm trees, to their brethren: then they returned to Samaria.

 The heads of the children of Ephraim returned the women and children to Judah.

16 At that time did king Ahaz send unto the kings of Assyria to help him. 17 For again the Edomites had come and smitten Judah, and carried away captives.

 Ahaz could have repented and asked the LORD (Jehovah) God to deliver him, and Judah as other kings did in the past, but he would not.

18 The Philistines also had invaded the cities of the low country, and of the south of Judah, and had taken Bethshemesh, and Ajalon, and Gederoth, and Shocho with the villages thereof, and Timnah with the villages thereof, Gimzo also and the villages thereof: and they dwelt there. 19 For the LORD brought Judah low because of Ahaz king of Israel; for he made Judah naked, and transgressed sore against the LORD.

Bethshemesh: The name means the house of the Sun.

Ajalon: Ayalon in Hebrew. A major road that goes through there even today with the same name. The valley of Ayalon.

The king of Assyria came

20 And Tilgathpilneser king of Assyria came unto him, and distressed him, but strengthened him not. 21 For Ahaz took away a portion *out* of the house of the LORD, and *out* of the house of the king, and of the princes, and gave *it* unto the king of Assyria: but he helped him not.

And distressed him: He grieved him greatly.

22 And in the time of his distress did he trespass yet more against the LORD: this *is that* king Ahaz. 23 For he sacrificed unto the gods of Damascus, which smote him: and he said,

“Because the gods of the kings of Syria help them, *therefore* will I sacrifice to them, that they may help me.”

But they were the ruin of him, and of all Israel.

 The gods of Damascus were the ruin of Ahaz and all of Israel. They led Ahaz and Judah away from the truth that comes only from the LORD (Jehovah).

The vessels of the house of God

24 And Ahaz gathered together the vessels of the house of God, and cut in pieces the vessels of the house of God, and shut up the doors of the house of the LORD, and he made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem. 25 And in every several city of Judah he made high places to burn incense unto other gods, and provoked to anger the LORD God of his fathers.

And shut up the doors of the house of God: Ahaz closed the temple. He died at the age of thirty-six because he provoked the LORD to anger.

26 Now the rest of his acts and of all his ways, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. 27 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city, *even* in Jerusalem: but they brought him not into the sepulchres of the kings of Israel: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

 The priests would not allow the wicked king to be buried with the righteous kings of Judah.

Chapter Twenty-nine

Hezekiah’s reign

1 Hezekiah began to reign *when he was* five and twenty years old, and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name *was* Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. 2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, according to all that David his father had done.

Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah: Also called Abi in 2nd Kings 18:2.

3 He in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the house of the LORD, and repaired them. 4 And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the east street, 5 And said unto them,

“Hear me, ye Levites, sanctify now yourselves, and sanctify the house of the LORD God of your fathers, and carry forth the filthiness out of the holy *place.* 6 For our fathers have trespassed, and done *that which was* evil in the eyes of the LORD our God, and have forsaken him, and have turned away their faces from the habitation of the LORD, and turned *their* backs. 7 Also they have shut up the doors of the porch, and put out the lamps, and have not burned incense nor offered burnt offerings in the holy *place* unto the God of Israel. 8 Wherefore the wrath of the LORD was upon Judah and Jerusalem, and he hath delivered them to trouble, to astonishment, and to hissing, as ye see with your eyes. 9 For, lo, our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and our daughters and our wives *are* in captivity for this. 10 Now *it is* in mine heart to make a covenant with the LORD God of Israel, that his fierce wrath may turn away from us. 11 My sons, be not now negligent: for the LORD hath chosen you to stand before him, to serve him, and that ye should minister unto him, and burn incense.”

He hath delivered them to trouble, to astonishment, and to hissing: The scornful noises made by their enemies against them.

The Levites arose

12 Then the Levites arose, Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah, of the sons of the Kohathites: and of the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehalelel: and of the Gershonites; Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah: 13 And of the sons of Elizaphan; Shimri, and Jeiel: and of the sons of Asaph; Zechariah, and Mattaniah: 14 And of the sons of Heman; Jehiel, and Shimei: and of the sons of Jeduthun; Shemaiah, and Uzziel. 15 And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and came, according to the commandment of the king, by the words of the LORD, to cleanse the house of the LORD.

Sanctify themselves: Ritually cleanse themselves.

The cleansing of the house of the LORD

16 And the priests went into the inner part of the house of the LORD, to cleanse *it,* and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of the LORD into the court of the house of the LORD. And the Levites took *it,* to carry *it* out abroad into the brook Kidron. 17 Now they began on the first *day* of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of the LORD: so they sanctified the house of the LORD in eight days; and in the sixteenth day of the first month they made an end.

The first day of the first month: The month of Aviv on the Jewish calendar which God gave to Moses and Israel as they left Egypt. See Exodus 12:2. Passover occurs on the fourteenth day of the first month on the Jewish calendar.

18 Then they went in to Hezekiah the king, and said,

“We have cleansed all the house of the LORD, and the altar of burnt offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the shewbread table, with all the vessels thereof. 19 Moreover all the vessels, which king Ahaz in his reign did cast away in his transgression, have we prepared and sanctified, and, behold, they *are* before the altar of the LORD.”

A sin offering

20 Then Hezekiah the king rose early, and gathered the rulers of the city, and went up to the house of the LORD. 21 And they brought seven bullocks, and seven rams, and seven lambs, and seven he goats, for a sin offering for the kingdom, and for the sanctuary, and for Judah. And he commanded the priests the sons of Aaron to offer *them* on the altar of the LORD. 22 So they killed the bullocks, and the priests received the blood, and sprinkled *it* on the altar: likewise, when they had killed the rams, they sprinkled the blood upon the altar: they killed also the lambs, and they sprinkled the blood upon the altar. 23 And they brought forth the he goats *for* the sin offering before the king and the congregation; and they laid their hands upon them: 24 And the priests killed them, and they made reconciliation with their blood upon the altar, to make an atonement for all Israel: for the king commanded *that* the burnt offering and the sin offering *should be made* for all Israel.

The he goats for the sin offering: .., and they laid their hands upon them: And the priests killed them: The required sacrifice for a sin offering, which is found in Leviticus 1:4, 4:15 & 24.

They made reconciliation with their blood: To reconcile Israel unto the LORD for their sins against him in breaking the covenant. Without the shedding of blood there was no reconciliation with the LORD.

To make an atonement for all Israel: A covering of their sin.

He set the Levites in the house of the LORD

25 And he set the Levites in the house of the LORD with cymbals, with psalteries, and with harps, according to the commandment of David, and of Gad the king's seer, and Nathan the prophet: for *so was* the commandment of the LORD by his prophets.

According to the commandment of David, and of Gad, the kings seer, and Nathan the prophet: See 1st Chronicles 24, 2nd Samuel 24:11-12 and 2nd Samuel chapter seven.

26 And the Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets. 27 And Hezekiah commanded to offer the burnt offering upon the altar. And when the burnt offering began, the song of the LORD began *also* with the trumpets, and with the instruments *ordained* by David king of Israel. 28 And all the congregation worshipped, and the singers sang, and the trumpeters sounded: *and* all *this continued* until the burnt offering was finished. 29 And when they had made an end of offering, the king and all that were present with him bowed themselves, and worshipped. 30 Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the LORD with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.

Asaph the seer: Asaph wrote many psalms that were prophetic in nature. See Psalms 50 & 73-83.

31 Then Hezekiah answered and said,

“Now ye have consecrated yourselves unto the LORD, come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings into the house of the LORD.”

And the congregation brought in sacrifices and thank offerings; and as many as were of a free heart burnt offerings. 32 And the number of the burnt offerings, which the congregation brought, was threescore and ten bullocks, an hundred rams, *and* two hundred lambs: all these *were* for a burnt offering to the LORD. 33 And the consecrated things *were* six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep. 34 But the priests were too few, so that they could not flay all the burnt offerings: wherefore their brethren the Levites did help them, till the work was ended, and until the *other* priests had sanctified themselves: for the Levites *were* more upright in heart to sanctify themselves than the priests.

The Levites were more upright in heart: Straight, sincere.

35 And also the burnt offerings *were* in abundance, with the fat of the peace offerings, and the drink offerings for *every* burnt offering. So the service of the house of the LORD was set in order. 36 And Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people, that God had prepared the people: for the thing was *done* suddenly.

Chapter Thirty

To keep the passover

1 And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of the LORD at Jerusalem, to keep the passover unto the LORD God of Israel.

The passover: A feast on the fourteenth day of the first month of the Jewish year commemorating the passover lamb shed for them the night before they were delivered.

2 For the king had taken counsel, and his princes, and all the congregation in Jerusalem, to keep the passover in the second month. 3 For they could not keep it at that time, because the priests had not sanctified themselves sufficiently, neither had the people gathered themselves together to Jerusalem. 4 And the thing pleased the king and all the congregation. 5 So they established a decree to make proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba even to Dan, that they should come to keep the passover unto the LORD God of Israel at Jerusalem: for they had not done *it* of a long *time in such sort* as it was written. 6 So the posts went with the letters from the king and his princes throughout all Israel and Judah, and according to the commandment of the king, saying,

“Ye children of Israel, turn again unto the LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and he will return to the remnant of you, that are escaped out of the hand of the kings of Assyria. 7 And be not ye like your fathers, and like your brethren, which trespassed against the LORD God of their fathers, *who* therefore gave them up to desolation, as ye see. 8 Now be ye not stiffnecked, as your fathers *were, but* yield yourselves unto the LORD, and enter into his sanctuary, which he hath sanctified for ever: and serve the LORD your God, that the fierceness of his wrath may turn away from you. 9 For if ye turn again unto the LORD, your brethren and your children *shall find* compassion before them that lead them captive, so that they shall come again into this land: for the LORD your God *is* gracious and merciful, and will not turn away *his* face from you, if ye return unto him.”

10 So the posts passed from city to city through the country of Ephraim and Manasseh even unto Zebulun: but they laughed them to scorn, and mocked them.

The posts passed from city to city: The kings post was delivered to all the kingdom of Israel and of Judah.

11 Nevertheless divers of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves, and came to Jerusalem. 12 Also in Judah the hand of God was to give them one heart to do the commandment of the king and of the princes, by the word of the LORD.

Divers: Many different people.

The hand of God was to give them one heart to do the commandment of the king: This meant that God would aid in this effort for them to do as the king wanted.

The feast of unleavened bread

13 And there assembled at Jerusalem much people to keep the feast of unleavened bread in the second month, a very great congregation. 14 And they arose and took away the altars that *were* in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense took they away, and cast *them* into the brook Kidron.

They took away the altars: These were the pagan altars erected all over Jerusalem by the previous king.

The fourteenth day of the second month

15 Then they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the second month: and the priests and the Levites were ashamed, and sanctified themselves, and brought in the burnt offerings into the house of the LORD. 16 And they stood in their place after their manner, according to the law of Moses the man of God: the priests sprinkled the blood, *which they received* of the hand of the Levites. 17 For *there were* many in the congregation that were not sanctified: therefore the Levites had the charge of the killing of the passovers for every one *that was* not clean, to sanctify *them* unto the LORD. 18 For a multitude of the people, *even* many of Ephraim, and Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, had not cleansed themselves, yet did they eat the passover otherwise than it was written. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying,

“The good LORD pardon every one 19 *That* prepareth his heart to seek God, the LORD God of his fathers, though *he be* not *cleansed* according to the purification of the sanctuary.”

He healed the people

20 And the LORD hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people. 21 And the children of Israel that were present at Jerusalem kept the feast of unleavened bread seven days with great gladness: and the Levites and the priests praised the LORD day by day, *singing* with loud instruments unto the LORD. 22 And Hezekiah spake comfortably unto all the Levites that taught the good knowledge of the LORD: and they did eat throughout the feast seven days, offering peace offerings, and making confession to the LORD God of their fathers.

He healed the people: He pardoned those who came from far away so they could partake of the passover.

Peace offerings: See Leviticus 3:1-9.

Making confession: They confessed their sins, their parents sins, the priest and kings sin, and the sins of the whole nation.

23 And the whole assembly took counsel to keep other seven days: and they kept *other* seven days with gladness. 24 For Hezekiah king of Judah did give to the congregation a thousand bullocks and seven thousand sheep; and the princes gave to the congregation a thousand bullocks and ten thousand sheep: and a great number of priests sanctified themselves.

Keep other seven days: Unleavened bread. Keep sheva. Keep seven days.

25 And all the congregation of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the congregation that came out of Israel, and the strangers that came out of the land of Israel, and that dwelt in Judah, rejoiced. 26 So there was great joy in Jerusalem: for since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel *there was* not the like in Jerusalem.

There was not the like: There was nothing like what they just experienced.

27 Then the priests the Levites arose and blessed the people: and their voice was heard, and their prayer came *up* to his holy dwelling place, *even* unto heaven.

Their prayer came up to his holy dwelling place: To the throne of God in the third heaven.

Chapter Thirty-one

Break, throw down and destroy

1 Now when all this was finished, all Israel that were present went out to the cities of Judah, and brake the images in pieces, and cut down the groves, and threw down the high places and the altars out of all Judah and Benjamin, in Ephraim also and Manasseh, until they had utterly destroyed them all.

The brake the images in pieces: They tore down all the things they used to worship other gods in the land.

Then all the children of Israel returned, every man to his possession, into their own cities. 2 And Hezekiah appointed the courses of the priests and the Levites after their courses, every man according to his service, the priests and Levites for burnt offerings and for peace offerings, to minister, and to give thanks, and to praise in the gates of the tents of the LORD.

The courses of the priests: The courses that king David set up in 1st Chronicles 24.

3 *He appointed* also the king's portion of his substance for the burnt offerings, *to wit,* for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as *it is* written in the law of the LORD.

To wit: More specifically, or to be precise.

The portion of the priests

4 Moreover he commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give the portion of the priests and the Levites, that they might be encouraged in the law of the LORD. 5 And as soon as the commandment came abroad, the children of Israel brought in abundance the firstfruits of corn, wine, and oil, and honey, and of all the increase of the field; and the tithe of all *things* brought they in abundantly.

The portion of the priests: The tithe that was meant for the priests.

6 And *concerning* the children of Israel and Judah, that dwelt in the cities of Judah, they also brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep, and the tithe of holy things which were consecrated unto the LORD their God, and laid *them* by heaps. 7 In the third month they began to lay the foundation of the heaps, and finished *them* in the seventh month. 8 And when Hezekiah and the princes came and saw the heaps, they blessed the LORD, and his people Israel. 9 Then Hezekiah questioned with the priests and the Levites concerning the heaps. 10 And Azariah the chief priest of the house of Zadok answered him, and said,

“Since *the people* began to bring the offerings into the house of the LORD, we have had enough to eat, and have left plenty: for the LORD hath blessed his people; and that which is left *is* this great store.”

11 Then Hezekiah commanded to prepare chambers in the house of the LORD; and they prepared *them,* 12 And brought in the offerings and the tithes and the dedicated *things* faithfully: over which Cononiah the Levite *was* ruler, and Shimei his brother *was* the next. 13 And Jehiel, and Azaziah, and Nahath, and Asahel, and Jerimoth, and Jozabad, and Eliel, and Ismachiah, and Mahath, and Benaiah, *were* overseers under the hand of Cononiah and Shimei his brother, at the commandment of Hezekiah the king, and Azariah the ruler of the house of God. 14 And Kore the son of Imnah the Levite, the porter toward the east, *was* over the freewill offerings of God, to distribute the oblations of the LORD, and the most holy things. 15 And next him *were* Eden, and Miniamin, and Jeshua, and Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests, in *their* set office, to give to their brethren by courses, as well to the great as to the small:

The oblations of the LORD: See Leviticus 7:38.

Their genealogy

16 Beside their genealogy of males, from three years old and upward, *even* unto every one that entereth into the house of the LORD, his daily portion for their service in their charges according to their courses; 17 Both to the genealogy of the priests by the house of their fathers, and the Levites from twenty years old and upward, in their charges by their courses; 18 And to the genealogy of all their little ones, their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, through all the congregation: for in their set office they sanctified themselves in holiness: 19 Also of the sons of Aaron the priests, *which were* in the fields of the suburbs of their cities, in every several city, the men that were expressed by name, to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all that were reckoned by genealogies among the Levites. 20 And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah, and wrought *that which was* good and right and truth before the LORD his God. 21 And in every work that he began in the service of the house of God, and in the law, and in the commandments, to seek his God, he did *it* with all his heart, and prospered.

Chapter Thirty-two

Sennacherib king of Assyria came

1 After these things, and the establishment thereof, Sennacherib king of Assyria came, and entered into Judah, and encamped against the fenced cities, and thought to win them for himself. 2 And when Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib was come, and that he was purposed to fight against Jerusalem,

He stopped the waters

3 He took counsel with his princes and his mighty men to stop the waters of the fountains which *were* without the city: and they did help him. 4 So there was gathered much people together, who stopped all the fountains, and the brook that ran through the midst of the land, saying, Why should the kings of Assyria come, and find much water?

He built up all the wall

5 Also he strengthened himself, and built up all the wall that was broken, and raised *it* up to the towers, and another wall without, and repaired Millo *in* the city of David, and made darts and shields in abundance. 6 And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the street of the gate of the city, and spake comfortably to them, saying,

“7 Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that *is* with him: for *there be* more with us than with him: 8 With him *is* an arm of flesh; but with us *is* the LORD our God to help us, and to fight our battles.”

An arm of flesh: The trust in men’s abilities apart from God.

And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. 9 After this did Sennacherib king of Assyria send his servants to Jerusalem, (but he *himself laid siege* against Lachish, and all his power with him,) unto Hezekiah king of Judah, and unto all Judah that *were* at Jerusalem, saying,

“10 Thus saith Sennacherib king of Assyria, Whereon do ye trust, that ye abide in the siege in Jerusalem? 11 Doth not Hezekiah persuade you to give over yourselves to die by famine and by thirst, saying, The LORD our God shall deliver us out of the hand of the king of Assyria? 12 Hath not the same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, Ye shall worship before one altar, and burn incense upon it? 13 Know ye not what I and my fathers have done unto all the people of *other* lands? were the gods of the nations of those lands any ways able to deliver their lands out of mine hand? 14 Who *was there* among all the gods of those nations that my fathers utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of mine hand, that your God should be able to deliver you out of mine hand? 15 Now therefore let not Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you on this manner, neither yet believe him: for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of mine hand, and out of the hand of my fathers: how much less shall your God deliver you out of mine hand?”

16 And his servants spake yet *more* against the LORD God, and against his servant Hezekiah. 17 He wrote also letters to rail on the LORD God of Israel, and to speak against him, saying,

“As the gods of the nations of *other* lands have not delivered their people out of mine hand, so shall not the God of Hezekiah deliver his people out of mine hand.”

18 Then they cried with a loud voice in the Jews' speech unto the people of Jerusalem that *were* on the wall, to affright them, and to trouble them; that they might take the city.

The LORD sent an angel

2nd Kings 19:1-37

19 And they spake against the God of Jerusalem, as against the gods of the people of the earth, *which were* the work of the hands of man. 20 And for this *cause* Hezekiah the king, and the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz, prayed and cried to heaven. 21 And the LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword.

The LORD sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men: 185,000 soldiers were killed by one angel.

They that came forth of his own bowels slew him: His own sons Adrammelech and Sharezer killed him. 2nd Kings 19:37.

Sennacherib is slain

22 Thus the LORD saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all *other,* and guided them on every side. 23 And many brought gifts unto the LORD to Jerusalem, and presents to Hezekiah king of Judah: so that he was magnified in the sight of all nations from thenceforth.

Hezekiah’s illness

24 In those days Hezekiah was sick to the death, and prayed unto the LORD: and he spake unto him, and he gave him a sign. 25 But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit *done* unto him; for his heart was lifted up: therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem.

He gave him a sign: The Jews require a sign. See 1st Corinthians 1:22.

But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit done unto him: Hezekiah didn’t offer an offering after God sent an angel to destroy the Assyrian army.

Hezekiah’s tunnel

26 Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, *both* he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the LORD came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah. 27 And Hezekiah had exceeding much riches and honour: and he made himself treasuries for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all manner of pleasant jewels; 28 Storehouses also for the increase of corn, and wine, and oil; and stalls for all manner of beasts, and cotes for flocks. 29 Moreover he provided him cities, and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance: for God had given him substance very much. 30 This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper watercourse of Gihon, and brought it straight down to the west side of the city of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all his works. 31 Howbeit in *the business of* the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to enquire of the wonder that was *done* in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all *that was* in his heart.

God left him, to try him: God did not tempt Hezekiah to sin, he tried him to see if he would serve him.

Hezekiah dies

32 Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his goodness, behold, they *are* written in the vision of Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, *and* in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. 33 And Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the chiefest of the sepulchres of the sons of David: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem did him honour at his death. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.

Chapter Thirty-three

Manasseh’s reign

1 Manasseh *was* twelve years old when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem: 2 But did *that which was* evil in the sight of the LORD, like unto the abominations of the heathen, whom the LORD had cast out before the children of Israel. 3 For he built again the high places which Hezekiah his father had broken down, and he reared up altars for Baalim, and made groves, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them.

The abominations of the heathen whom the LORD cast out before the children of Israel: See Genesis 15:18-21.

Baalim: The name means strange gods (plural of Baal).

All the host of heaven: The sun, moon, and stars. See Deuteronomy 4:19.

4 Also he built altars in the house of the LORD, whereof the LORD had said,

“In Jerusalem shall my name be for ever.”

5 And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the LORD. 6 And he caused his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom: also he observed times, and used enchantments, and used witchcraft, and dealt with a familiar spirit, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of the LORD, to provoke him to anger.

He caused his children to pass through the fire: He offered them as human sacrifices to pagan gods.

The valley of the son of Hinnom: Where people offered their children as a sacrifice to Molech. See Joshua 15:8.

2nd Kings 23:10

The idol

7 And he set a carved image, the idol which he had made, in the house of God, of which God had said to David and to Solomon his son,

“In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen before all the tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever: 8 Neither will I any more remove the foot of Israel from out of the land which I have appointed for your fathers; so that they will take heed to do all that I have commanded them, according to the whole law and the statutes and the ordinances by the hand of Moses.”

2nd Kings 21:7

Manasseh’s captivity in Assyria

9 So Manasseh made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to err, *and* to do worse than the heathen, whom the LORD had destroyed before the children of Israel. 10 And the LORD spake to Manasseh, and to his people: but they would not hearken. 11 Wherefore the LORD brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, which took Manasseh among the thorns, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon.

And bound him with fetters: See Judges 16:21.

Manasseh’s repentance

12 And when he was in affliction, he besought the LORD his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers, 13 And prayed unto him: and he was intreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the LORD he *was* God.

He was intreated of him: God interceded in his behalf after he prayed.

Manasseh’s began to build and tear down

14 Now after this he built a wall without the city of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, even to the entering in at the fish gate, and compassed about Ophel, and raised it up a very great height, and put captains of war in all the fenced cities of Judah. 15 And he took away the strange gods, and the idol out of the house of the LORD, and all the altars that he had built in the mount of the house of the LORD, and in Jerusalem, and cast *them* out of the city. 16 And he repaired the altar of the LORD, and sacrificed thereon peace offerings and thank offerings, and commanded Judah to serve the LORD God of Israel.

Gihon: On the north-eastern side of the city of Jerusalem.

Ophel: The place where the Nethinims lived.

The fish gate: Is mentioned three other times in scripture. See Nehemiah 3:3, !2:39 and Zephaniah 1:10.

The high places

17 Nevertheless the people did sacrifice still in the high places, *yet* unto the LORD their God only. 18 Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and his prayer unto his God, and the words of the seers that spake to him in the name of the LORD God of Israel, behold, they *are written* in the book of the kings of Israel. 19 His prayer also, and *how God* was intreated of him, and all his sin, and his trespass, and the places wherein he built high places, and set up groves and graven images, before he was humbled: behold, they *are* written among the sayings of the seers.

The sayings of the seers: The seers, and their sayings are found in the bible. Seers was an early name for a prophet. See 1st Samuel 9:9.

Manasseh dies

20 So Manasseh slept with his fathers, and they buried him in his own house: and Amon his son reigned in his stead.

Amon reigned in Jerusalem

21 Amon *was* two and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned two years in Jerusalem. 22 But he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the LORD, as did Manasseh his father: for Amon sacrificed unto all the carved images which Manasseh his father had made, and served them; 23 And humbled not himself before the LORD, as Manasseh his father had humbled himself; but Amon trespassed more and more.

Amon was slain

24 And his servants conspired against him, and slew him in his own house. 25 But the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.

 Conspiracies were usually carried out in the kingdom of Judah by the religious Jews killing the wicked kings that did not worship the LORD.

Chapter Thirty-four

Josiah’s reign

1 Josiah *was* eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem one and thirty years. 2 And he did *that which was* right in the sight of the LORD, and walked in the ways of David his father, and declined *neither* to the right hand, nor to the left.

Declined neither to the right hand, nor to the left: He didn’t waiver in his service to the LORD in any matter.

Josiah begins to seek the LORD

3 For in the eighth year of his reign, while he was yet young, he began to seek after the God of David his father: and in the twelfth year he began to purge Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images. 4 And they brake down the altars of Baalim in his presence; and the images, that *were* on high above them, he cut down; and the groves, and the carved images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces, and made dust *of them,* and strowed *it* upon the graves of them that had sacrificed unto them. 5 And he burnt the bones of the priests upon their altars, and cleansed Judah and Jerusalem. 6 And *so did he* in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim, and Simeon, even unto Naphtali, with their mattocks round about. 7 And when he had broken down the altars and the groves, and had beaten the graven images into powder, and cut down all the idols throughout all the land of Israel, he returned to Jerusalem.

Made dust of them: He ground them to powder.

Baalim: The name means strange gods (plural of Baal).

So he did in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim and Simeon: The tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim came from Joseph the son of Jacob who received two tribes instead of one because of Rueben’s sin of sleeping with his father’s concubine.

 Simeon’s tribe was smaller and it shared land allotments with Judah, so they became “almost” one tribe

8 Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, when he had purged the land, and the house, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the recorder, to repair the house of the LORD his God. 9 And when they came to Hilkiah the high priest, they delivered the money that was brought into the house of God, which the Levites that kept the doors had gathered of the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and of all the remnant of Israel, and of all Judah and Benjamin; and they returned to Jerusalem.

 The tribe of Benjamin was so small at this time, but they were known as the kingdom of Judah because of its size and that the kings came from the tribe of Judah.

 Levi was also confederate with Judah because they didn’t own any land but served as priests in the temple in Jerusalem.

10 And they put *it* in the hand of the workmen that had the oversight of the house of the LORD, and they gave it to the workmen that wrought in the house of the LORD, to repair and amend the house: 11 Even to the artificers and builders gave they *it,* to buy hewn stone, and timber for couplings, and to floor the houses which the kings of Judah had destroyed.

 Some of the kings of Judah did not walk in the ways of king David and they destroyed many of the things dedicated to the LORD in the temple.

12 And the men did the work faithfully: and the overseers of them *were* Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohathites, to set *it* forward; and *other of* the Levites, all that could skill of instruments of musick. 13 Also *they were* over the bearers of burdens, and *were* overseers of all that wrought the work in any manner of service: and of the Levites *there were* scribes, and officers, and porters.

The book of the law is found

14 And when they brought out the money that was brought into the house of the LORD, Hilkiah the priest found a book of the law of the LORD *given* by Moses. 15 And Hilkiah answered and said to Shaphan the scribe,

“I have found the book of the law in the house of the LORD.”

And Hilkiah delivered the book to Shaphan. 16 And Shaphan carried the book to the king, and brought the king word back again, saying,

“All that was committed to thy servants, they do *it.*”

17 And they have gathered together the money that was found in the house of the LORD, and have delivered it into the hand of the overseers, and to the hand of the workmen.

The book of the law is read

18 Then Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying,

“Hilkiah the priest hath given me a book.”

And Shaphan read it before the king. 19 And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the law, that he rent his clothes. 20 And the king commanded Hilkiah, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Abdon the son of Micah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah a servant of the king's, saying,

“21 Go, enquire of the LORD for me, and for them that are left in Israel and in Judah, concerning the words of the book that is found: for great *is* the wrath of the LORD that is poured out upon us, because our fathers have not kept the word of the LORD, to do after all that is written in this book.”

He rent his clothes: To show his mourning for how far he and his people had turned from following the LORD.

Huldah the prophetess

22 And Hilkiah, and *they* that the king *had appointed,* went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvath, the son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe; (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the college:) and they spake to her to that *effect.*

The college: A place of repetitional learning in Jerusalem.

23 And she answered them,

“Thus saith the LORD God of Israel, Tell ye the man that sent you to me, 24 Thus saith the LORD,”

“Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, *even* all the curses that are written in the book which they have read before the king of Judah: 25 Because they have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore my wrath shall be poured out upon this place, and shall not be quenched. 26 And as for the king of Judah, who sent you to enquire of the LORD, so shall ye say unto him,”

“Thus saith the LORD God of Israel *concerning* the words which thou hast heard; 27 Because thine heart was tender, and thou didst humble thyself before God, when thou heardest his words against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, and humbledst thyself before me, and didst rend thy clothes, and weep before me; I have even heard *thee* also, saith the LORD. 28 Behold, I will gather thee to thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil that I will bring upon this place, and upon the inhabitants of the same. So they brought the king word again. 29 Then the king sent and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. 30 And the king went up into the house of the LORD, and all the men of Judah, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, great and small: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant that was found in the house of the LORD. 31 And the king stood in his place, and made a covenant before the LORD, to walk after the LORD, and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with all his heart, and with all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant which are written in this book. 32 And he caused all that were present in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand *to it.* And the inhabitants of Jerusalem did according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers. 33 And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that *pertained* to the children of Israel, and made all that were present in Israel to serve, *even* to serve the LORD their God. *And* all his days they departed not from following the LORD, the God of their fathers.

Chapter Thirty-five

The death of Josiah

1 Moreover Josiah kept a passover unto the LORD in Jerusalem: and they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the first month. 2 And he set the priests in their charges, and encouraged them to the service of the house of the LORD, 3 And said unto the Levites that taught all Israel, which were holy unto the LORD,

“Put the holy ark in the house which Solomon the son of David king of Israel did build; *it shall* not *be* a burden upon *your* shoulders: serve now the LORD your God, and his people Israel, 4 And prepare *yourselves* by the houses of your fathers, after your courses, according to the writing of David king of Israel, and according to the writing of Solomon his son. 5 And stand in the holy *place* according to the divisions of the families of the fathers of your brethren the people, and *after* the division of the families of the Levites. 6 So kill the passover, and sanctify yourselves, and prepare your brethren, that *they* may do according to the word of the LORD by the hand of Moses.”

7 And Josiah gave to the people, of the flock, lambs and kids, all for the passover offerings, for all that were present, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand bullocks: these *were* of the king's substance. 8 And his princes gave willingly unto the people, to the priests, and to the Levites: Hilkiah and Zechariah and Jehiel, rulers of the house of God, gave unto the priests for the passover offerings two thousand and six hundred *small cattle,* and three hundred oxen. 9 Conaniah also, and Shemaiah and Nethaneel, his brethren, and Hashabiah and Jeiel and Jozabad, chief of the Levites, gave unto the Levites for passover offerings five thousand *small cattle,* and five hundred oxen.

They killed the passover

10 So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their place, and the Levites in their courses, according to the king's commandment. 11 And they killed the passover, and the priests sprinkled *the blood* from their hands, and the Levites flayed *them.* 12 And they removed the burnt offerings, that they might give according to the divisions of the families of the people, to offer unto the LORD, as *it is* written in the book of Moses. And so *did they* with the oxen. 13 And they roasted the passover with fire according to the ordinance: but the *other* holy *offerings* sod they in pots, and in caldrons, and in pans, and divided *them* speedily among all the people. 14 And afterward they made ready for themselves, and for the priests: because the priests the sons of Aaron *were busied* in offering of burnt offerings and the fat until night; therefore the Levites prepared for themselves, and for the priests the sons of Aaron.

The singers

15 And the singers the sons of Asaph *were* in their place, according to the commandment of David, and Asaph, and Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer; and the porters *waited* at every gate; they might not depart from their service; for their brethren the Levites prepared for them.

Asaph: The seer and psalm writer.

To keep the passover

16 So all the service of the LORD was prepared the same day, to keep the passover, and to offer burnt offerings upon the altar of the LORD, according to the commandment of king Josiah. 17 And the children of Israel that were present kept the passover at that time, and the feast of unleavened bread seven days.

The feast of unleavened bread: The feast that follows immediately after passover.

18 And there was no passover like to that kept in Israel from the days of Samuel the prophet; neither did all the kings of Israel keep such a passover as Josiah kept, and the priests, and the Levites, and all Judah and Israel that were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. 19 In the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah was this passover kept.

Necho king of Egypt came up to fight

20 After all this, when Josiah had prepared the temple, Necho king of Egypt came up to fight against Carchemish by Euphrates: and Josiah went out against him. 21 But he sent ambassadors to him, saying, What have I to do with thee, thou king of Judah? *I come* not against thee this day, but against the house wherewith I have war: for God commanded me to make haste: forbear thee from *meddling with* God, who *is* with me, that he destroy thee not. 22 Nevertheless Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself, that he might fight with him, and hearkened not unto the words of Necho from the mouth of God, and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo. 23 And the archers shot at king Josiah; and the king said to his servants,

“Have me away; for I am sore wounded.”

Carchemish: See Jeremiah 46:2.

Euphrates: The river.

24 His servants therefore took him out of that chariot, and put him in the second chariot that he had; and they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died, and was buried in *one of* the sepulchres of his fathers.

The mourning for Josiah

And all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah. 25 And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah: and all the singing men and the singing women spake of Josiah in their lamentations to this day, and made them an ordinance in Israel: and, behold, they *are* written in the lamentations.

The lamentations: They are written in the book of Lamentations that was written by the prophet Jeremiah.

26 Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and his goodness, according to *that which was* written in the law of the LORD, 27 And his deeds, first and last, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

Chapter Thirty-six

Jehoahaz becomes king

1 Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's stead in Jerusalem. 2 Jehoahaz *was* twenty and three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. 3 And the king of Egypt put him down at Jerusalem, and condemned the land in an hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold. 4 And the king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem, and turned his name to Jehoiakim. And Necho took Jehoahaz his brother, and carried him to Egypt.

The king of Egypt put him down at Jerusalem: He actually took him to Egypt to live out his last days there, while replacing him with his brother. He only reigned for 3 months.

And condemned the land: He caused them to pay tribute to Egypt.

Eliakim/Jehoiakim reigns

5 Jehoiakim *was* twenty and five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem: and he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the LORD his God.

 He was a puppet king appointed by Egypt who would do Egypt’s bidding, so he was already a compromiser concerning the things of the LORD.

Nebuchadnezzar came up

6 Against him came up Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and bound him in fetters, to carry him to Babylon. 7 Nebuchadnezzar also carried of the vessels of the house of the LORD to Babylon, and put them in his temple at Babylon.

And bound him in fetters: Chains.

 Jehoiakim, the king was taken into Babylonian captivity, because he would not take a stand for the LORD, and because Judah had followed its wicked kings and turned from following the LORD with their whole hearts as David did.

The vessels of the house of the LORD: They were stored in the treasury of Babylon, but the ark of the covenant was not mentioned.

8 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and his abominations which he did, and that which was found in him, behold, they *are* written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah: and Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead.

Jehoiachin reins

9 Jehoiachin *was* eight years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem: and he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the LORD. 10 And when the year was expired, king Nebuchadnezzar sent, and brought him to Babylon, with the goodly vessels of the house of the LORD, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem.

Zedekiah was made king over Judah

11 Zedekiah *was* one and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. 12 And he did *that which was* evil in the sight of the LORD his God, *and* humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet *speaking* from the mouth of the LORD.

 Zedekiah was a puppet king placed on the throne to do the bidding of the king of Babylon so of course he did evil in the sight of the LORD.

Jeremiah the prophet: See the book of Jeremiah.

Zedekiah’s rebellion

13 And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God: but he stiffened his neck, and hardened his heart from turning unto the LORD God of Israel.

He stiffened his neck: He was very resistant to turn unto the LORD because of what the consequences would be from Babylon. He feared Nebuchadnezzar over the LORD.

14 Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the LORD which he had hallowed in Jerusalem.

The abominations of the heathen: A heathen was anyone who did not know the LORD. Their abominations included human sacrifice and sexual perversions.

His messengers

15 And the LORD God of their fathers sent to them by his messengers, rising up betimes, and sending; because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling place: 16 But they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and misused his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD arose against his people, till *there was* no remedy.

Rising up betimes: Often.

His messengers: The LORD sent to them prophets to warn them to turn back to the LORD before it was too late, but they didn’t listen.

His dwelling place: The house of the LORD (the temple).

Till there was no remedy: There was no way of them being reclaimed from their debauchery.

17 Therefore he brought upon them the king of the Chaldees, who slew their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or maiden, old man, or him that stooped for age: he gave *them* all into his hand. 18 And all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the LORD, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes; all *these* he brought to Babylon. 19 And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.

The captivity of Judah

20 And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; where they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia: 21 To fulfil the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah,

“until the land had enjoyed her sabbaths: *for* as long as she lay desolate she kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.”

22 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the LORD *spoken* by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and *put it* also in writing, saying,

The decree of Cyrus

“23 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath the LORD God of heaven given me; and he hath charged me to build him an house in Jerusalem, which *is* in Judah. Who *is there* among you of all his people? The LORD his God *be* with him, and let him go up.”

 This was not the end of Cyrus’ decree, but this is where the LORD wanted the book of Chronicles to end, with a hope for the children of the captivity that they would have their nation restored to them, and their temple as well.

The End

2nd Chronicles Tests

Chapter 1

 1. What was located at the high place at Gibeon?

 2. Where was the ark of God located?

 3. What was placed before the tabernacle of the Lord?

 4. What did Solomon ask the Lord for when the Lord asked him what He could give him?

 5. Why did Solomon ask for these particular things?

 6. What did the Lord also give Solomon based on his initial request?

 7. List five items that describe Solomon's wealth.

Chapter 2

 1. Who did Solomon beseech to send him cedar, fir, and algum trees out of Lebanon?

 2.  What else did Solomon request?

 3. What did Solomon give the king of Tyre's servants, the ones who were hewers that cut timber?

 4. What skills did the man have that Huram, the king of Tyre, sent Solomon?

 5. List the number of each workman.

Chapter 3

 1. What was the location Solomon began to build the house of the Lord?

 2. What else happened at Mount Moriah?

 3. What was the vail made of?

 4. What were the names of the two pillars?

Chapter 4

 1. What made up the temple furnishings?

2. What other items were made by Huram, the king of Tyre?

 3. Where were these items cast?

 4. List the items Solomon made for the house of God.

Chapter 5

 1. Why did Solomon assemble the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, the chief of the fathers of the children of Israel unto Jerusalem?

 2. Who brought up the ark of the covenant and what else did they bring?

 3. Where was the ark placed?

 4. What was inside the ark?

 5. What happened after the priests came out of the holy place, and the Levites, which were the singers, with their sons and their brethren stood at the east end of the altar and they lifted up their voices with the trumpets, cymbals, and instruments of musick and praised the Lord?

Chapter 6

 1. What location did the Lord choose to put His name that it might be there, and who did He chose to be over His people Israel?

 2. What was the promise the Lord made to David?

 3. What did Solomon request of God now that He dwelt in the house of God?

 4. List one of the scenarios in the request to God.

Chapter 7

 1. What happened when Solomon had made an end of praying?

 2. Who dedicated the house of God?

 3. Why did Solomon hallow the middle of the court that was before the house of the Lord?

 4. What did Solomon and all of Israel keep during this time?

5. How long did they keep the dedication of the altar?

 6. Write out 2 Chronicles 7:14:

 7. What was the stipulation God made in order for the throne of the kingdom to never fail to have a man to be ruler in Israel?

 8. What were the consequences of disobeying?

Chapter 8

 1. Name the cities built by Solomon.

 2. Who did Solomon make to pay tribute?

 3. Who did Solomon bring up out of the city of David unto the house that he had built for them and why?

 4. How often did Solomon offer burnt offerings unto the Lord on the altar of the Lord?

 5. According to who or what did Solomon appoint the courses of the priests to their service and the Levites to their charges, as well as the porters?

 6. Who sent Solomon, by the hands of his servants, a gift of ships and servants who had knowledge of the sea?

 7. Where did these ships go and what did they bring back?

Chapter 9

 1. Where was the queen from that visited Solomon to prove him with hard questions?

 2. What did she bring with her for Solomon?

 3. What did she give to Solomon?

 4. What other items did the servants of Huram bring to Solomon?

 5. What did Solomon make of the algum trees?

 6. What was the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year?

 7. What was the great throne that Solomon made, made of?

 8. What were all the drinking vessels of king Solomon made from?

 9.  What did the king's ships bring back from Tarshish every three years?

10. What did the kings of the earth bring to Solomon when they sought his presence to hear his wisdom that God had put in his heart?

11. What did the king make in Jerusalem as stones and sycomore trees?

12. What was the length of Solomon's reign?

Chapter 10

 1. Where did Rehoboam go for all Israel to make him king?

 2. Who did Rehoboam choose to listen to in regard to the issue of the grievous yoke his father had placed on the people?

 3. What was his answer to the people?

 4. Where did this decision come from and why?

 5. Who reigned over the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah?

Chapter 11

 1. Who did Rehoboam gather to himself in Jerusalem to fight for him?

 2. Who did Rehoboam want them to help him fight and why?

 3. Who did the Lord send to Rehoboam and what was his message?

 4. What was it that Rehoboam created in several cities?

 5. Why were the Levites and priests in the suburbs and in all the coasts?

 6. What other abominations did Jeroboam do?

Chapter 12

 1. Why did Shemaiah, the prophet, go to Rehoboam and what was his message?

 2. When the people humbled themselves before the Lord, what did the Lord do?

 3. What did Rehoboam use to replace the shields of gold that Shishak looted out of the house of the Lord and the king's house?

4. Did Rehoboam die as a good or an evil king?

Chapter 13

 1. Where did Abijah stand up and shout to Jeroboam and all of Israel?

 2. Who did Abijah declare as his god?

 3. Who had the larger army? Jeroboam or Abijah?

 4. Who did Abijah declare was on his side?

 5. Abijah and his army were surrounded by Jeroboam.  What actions did Abijah take to win the battle and what happened?

Chapter 14

 1. During Abijah's son, Asa's reign, what acts did he do before the Lord?

 2. What did Asa build during the years of rest in the land?

 3. When Zerah, the Ethiopian, came against Asa, what did Asa do?

4. Who else did Asa, with the Lord's help, smite? What did there spoil consist of?

Chapter 15

 1. Who did the Spirit of God come upon?

 2. What did Asa do after hearing the words of the prophecy of Oded, the prophet?

 3. What did Asa do in regard to his mother, Maachah, the queen and why?

 4. Did Asa remove the high places?

 5. What did Asa bring into the house of God?

Chapter 16

 1. Why did Baasha, king of Israel, come up against Judah and build Ramah?

2. What did Asa do in order to stop Baasha?

 3. What happened when Baasha heard of it?

 4. What were the actions of Asa when this happened?

 5. Who came to Asa and rebuked him for trusting in the king of Syria instead of the Lord?

 6. What were the consequences?

 7. Where was Asa's disease located?

 8. Who did he seek to heal him?

Chapter 17

 1. Who reigned in Asa's stead and strengthened themselves against Israel?

 2. Did Jehoshaphat walk in the ways of his father David or did he follow Baalim?

 3. What did he take away out of Judah?

 4. What did he send his princes to do?

 5. Who else did Jehoshaphat send with his princes?

 6. What were the princes teaching from?

 7. Who brought presents to Jehoshaphat and why?

Chapter 18

 1. Who did Jehoshaphat join affinity with?

 2. Where did Jehoshaphat want Ahab to go with him?

 3. Who did Ahab gather to inquire about going into battle?

 4. What was the name of the prophet of Judah that Jehoshaphat and Ahab consulted?

 5. What was Ahab's exception with him?

 6. What did the 400 prophets of Israel prophesy?

 7. What did Micaiah prophesy?

 8. What else did Micaiah "see"?

 9. What was it that influenced the 400 prophets of Israel?

10. Who put the lying spirit in them?

11. What did Ahab, the king of Israel have done to Micaiah?

12. How did Ahab die?

Chapter 19

 1. Who reproved Jehoshaphat and why?

 2. What did Jehoshaphat tell the judges he appointed?

 3. Who did Jehoshaphat set over the matters of the Lord, the king's matters, and who would be officers?

Chapter 20

 1. Who were the people groups that were coming against Judah?

 2. What actions did Jehoshaphat take?

3. Write out the prayer for judgment in 2 Chronicles 20:12.

 4. Who did the Spirit of the Lord come upon?

 5. What did the Spirit of the Lord tell the people through Jahaziel. Write out. 2 Chronicles 20:15, 17.

 6. What happened when the people began to sing and praise the Lord?

 7. How much spoil was taken by Judah that day?

 8. What came upon all the kingdoms of those countries because of this battle?

 9. After this, who did Jehoshaphat align himself with?

10. Because of Jehoshaphat's alignment with a wicked king, what did Eliezer, prophesy?

Chapter 21

 1. What did Jehoram do once he took over the throne from his father, Jehoshaphat?

 2. Did he walk in the way of his father David or in the way of the kings of Israel?

 3. Who was his wife?

 4. Why did Edom revolt from under the dominion of Judah and make themselves a king?

 5. What was the reason for Libnah to revolt?

 6. What did Elijah, the prophet prophesy in writing to Jehoram and why?

 7. What other steps did the Lord take?

 8. How long was Jehoram sick with the disease of his bowels before they fell out and he died?

Chapter 22

 1. Why did Jehoram's youngest son, Ahaziah, reign?

 2. Who was his mother?

 3. Why was he a wicked king?

 4. What was the reason for the destruction of Ahaziah?

 5. Where was Ahaziah found and slain?

 6. What did Athaliah do once she heard her son, Ahaziah was dead?

 7. Who took Joash, the son of Ahaziah, and stole him from among the king's sons that were slain and hid him and his nurse in a bedchamber?

 8. What was the length of time Joash was hidden and where?

 9. How was she able to hide him in that location?

Chapter 23

 1. Why did Jehoiada gather his captains, the Levites, and the chief of the fathers of Israel and go to Jerusalem?

 2. How were they divided up?

 3. Who were the only ones allowed in the house of the Lord and why?

 4. What did Jehoiada the priest deliver to the captains of hundreds?

 5. Who was anointed king?

 6. Why was he so severely protected during his coronation?

 7. Where was Athaliah slain?

 8. What was the covenant that Jehoiada made betweeen him, the people, and the king?

 9. What did the people do after this covenant was made?

Chapter 24

 1.  What was in Joash's mind to do?

 2. Why did the house need repair?

 3. How was the money gathered to fund the repair?

 4. After the repairs were made, what did they do with the leftover money?

 5. What did the princes of Judah do after making obeisance to the king?

 6. What were the Lord's actions against them?

 7. Who did the Spirit of God come upon?

 8. What was his message from the Lord?

 9. What did the people do?

10. What happened at the end of the year?

11. After leaving him in great diseases, what did they conspire against him for?

12. Who were those that conspired against him?

Chapter 25

 1. When Amaziah's kingdom was established, what action did he take, what was the exception, and why?

 2. Why was the army of Israel that Amaziah had gathered angry?

 3. How did Amaziah defeat Edom?

 4. What did Amaziah do that kindled the Lord's anger?

 5. Who did Amaziah seek out to meet him face to face and who won the battle that ensued?

Chapter 26

 1. Who did Uzziah seek the Lord through and as long as he sought the Lord, the Lord made him to prosper?

 2. Who gave Uzziah gifts?

 3. List some of the things Uzziah made.

 4. What was one thing Uzziah loved?

 5. What was Uzziah's sin?

 6. What transpired in the temple when the priests confronted Uzziah about his trespass?

Chapter 27

 1. What did Jotham build?

 2. Who did Jotham fight against and have them pay him talents of silver, wheat, and barley?

Chapter 28

 1. Who did Ahaz walk in the way of?

 2. List the abominations he committed.

 3. Who did the Lord deliver him into the hand of because of these abominations?

 4. Who was the prophet the Lord used to confront the host that came to Samaria and told them to release the captives as the fierce wrath of God was upon them?

 5. What did they do with the captives?

 6. For what reason did king Ahaz send unto the kings of Assyria to help him?

 7. Ahaz took away a portion out of the house of the Lord, and out of the house of the king and of the princes and gave it to the king of Assyria for his help. What help did Tilgathpilneser give Ahaz?

 8. For lack of help, what did this cause Ahaz to do?

 9. What was Ahaz's reason for this?

10. What were his actions in response?

Chapter 29

 1. What did Hezekiah do in the first year of his reign?

 2. What was in Hezekiah's heart to do?

 3. How many days did they sanctify the house of the Lord?

 4. Who was the atonement made for?

 5. Who helped the priests to flay all the burnt offerings?

Chapter 30

 1. When did Hezekiah have all his princes, and all the congregation in Jerusalem keep the passover?

 2. Who did Hezekiah send letters to about the observance of passover?

 3. Where was a proclamation made in regard to the keeping of the passover?

 4. When was the feast of unleavened bread held?

 5. When did they kill the passover?

 6. How long did the children of Israel that were present at Jerusalem keep the feast of unleavened bread?

Chapter 31

 1. What happened after the feast of unleavened bread?

 2. What did Hezekiah appoint?

 3. What did Hezekiah command the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give?

 4. What did the people bring the firstfruits of?

 5. Who brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep, and the holy things which were consecrated unto the Lord?

 6 Who saw over the offerings and the dedicated things?

 7. Who was over the freewill offerings?

 8. How did Hezekiah seek the Lord?

Chapter 32

 1. Who came into Judah and encamped against the fenced cities thinking to win them for himself?

 2. What did Hezekiah do to try and stop Sennacherib?

 3. What did Hezekiah remind his people?

 4. What happened when the servants of Sennacherib stood and mocked God and the people?

 5. What actions did the Lord take at this time?

 6. What happened to Sennacherib?

 7. Why did God leave Hezekiah?

Chapter 33

 1. What abominations did Manasseh, the son of Hezekiah commit?

 2. What was the Lord's response to this evil?

 3. Did Manasseh repent?

 4. What did Manasseh do after he humbled himself before God?

 5. What abominations did Amon commit?

 6. How did Amon die?

 7. What was the response of the people?

Chapter 34

 1. In the eighth year of his reign, what did king Josiah begin to do?

 2. What did Josiah do in his twelfth year?

 3. What did Josiah do in the eighteenth year of his reign after he had purged the land and the house?

 4. Who found a book of the law in the house of the Lord?

 5. What was the name of the prophetess that Hilkiah and those appointed went to see?

 6. Where did she dwell?

 7. Briefly describe her message from the Lord.

 8. How was God's covenant renewed?

Chapter 35

 1. When was the passover kept?

 2. Where did Josiah tell the Levites to put the holy ark?

 3. What was Josiah's charge to the priests?

 4. Who provided the lambs and kids for the passover offerings for all that were present?

 5. Who gave willingly unto the people, to the priests, and to the Levites?

 6. How long did the children of Israel that ere present keep the passover and the feast of unleavened bread?

 7. Who came up to fight against Carchemish by Euphrates?

 8. What did Josiah do in order to fight against him?

 9. How was king Josiah wounded?

10. Where did Josiah die?

11. What was the name of the prophet who lamented for Josiah?

Chapter 36

 1. Who put Jehoahaz, the son of Josiah, down in Jerusalem and condemned the land in a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold?

 2. Who did the king of Egypt make king over Judah and Jerusalem and changed his name to Jehoiakim?

 3. Who came up against Jehoiakim and bound him in fetters to carry him to Babylon?

 4. What else did he carry away?

 5. How long did Jehoiachin reign before Nebuchadnezzar sent and brought him to Babylon with the goodly vessels of the house of the Lord and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem?

 6. Which prophet did Zedekiah refuse to humble himself before?

 7. Who else did Zedekiah rebel against besides the Lord?

 8. Who did the Lord send to His people because He had compassion on them and His dwelling place even though they transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen and polluted the house of the Lord?

 9. Describe the peoples' response.

10. Who did the Lord send against His people in their rebellion and what was the outcome?

11. Where did he take all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of the Lord, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes?

12. What other atrocity did they perform?

13. Of those that escaped from the sword, where were they carried away to and what happened to them?

14. How long were they in captivity and why?

15. Who did the Lord stir up the spirit of that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom and put it also in writing?

16. What was the proclamation? Write it out. 2 Chronicles 36:23.